Page 1

IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT FOR THE WESTERN DISTRICT OF VIRGINIA

ROANOKE DIVISION

- - - - - - - - - - - - - -

JEFFREY HODGES,
TOMMY LEE BONDS, and
JOHN PAUL SPANGLER,

Plaintiffs :

-vs- : Civil Action

: No. 7:12cv00362

FEDERAL-MOGUL CORPORATION, :

et al.,

Defendants :

Detendants

November 11, 2013 9:30 a.m.

DEPOSITION OF:

MARTIN SCHLOSS

CENTRAL VIRGINIA REPORTERS
PO BOX 12628
ROANOKE, VIRGINIA
(540)380-5017

```
Page 26
 1
                     Okay. If Mr. Hodges, Mr. Bonds, and
              0
 2
    Mr. Spangler were not present cleaning the ductwork at
 3
     Federal-Mogul on December 31, 2010, would that
 4
     explosion have occurred?
 5
                     Could that explosion have occurred, or
 6
     would that --
7
                     I am asking first would that.
8
              Α
                     It's possible that the explosion could
    have occurred based on the information that I have
 9
10
           The role that the employees played in that
11
     decision -- or in that explosion, it's -- I would say
    based on what I found, it could have exploded without
12
     them being there. That's my -- my professional
13
     opinion is, is from what I saw and working on
14
     different dust collectors like that that there's a
15
16
    possibility that that could happen.
17
                     Okay. So to put it another way, I
     suppose -- well, let me go into another question with
18
            Do you have an opinion as to whether or not any
19
     of the actions taken by the plaintiffs that day in
20
     cleaning the ductwork caused or contributed to the
21
22
     explosion occurring specifically on that day?
23
                     From my analysis of the explosion and
              Α
24
     of the equipment and the videotape and the -- you
```

```
Page 27
 1
     know, based on all of those things and where I
 2
     determined the explosion originate, it would have made
 3
     no difference if they were working on it or not
 4
     working on it.
 5
                     Okay. Why is that?
              0
 6
                     Because I don't think they had -- in my
7
     professional opinion, the explosion didn't originate
 8
     at the employees. It originated in the dust
 9
     collector, and there was nothing that the employees
10
     were doing that was going to change that fact or
11
     contribute to it in the dust collector per my
     findings.
12
                     All right. And this ventilation system
13
14
     had been operating for approximately seven years --
15
              Α
                     Yes.
16
                     -- prior to this day?
                     Uh-huh.
17
              Α
                     Okay. Were there any conditions that
18
     were present on December 31, 2010, that were different
19
20
     than any other day that it had been operating up until
21
     then?
22
                     I don't have that information.
              Α
23
                     Okay. Do you have an opinion with a
              Q
24
     reasonable degree of engineering probability as to why
```

Page 30 1 That's something that is present at all times and had 2 been present in this system every day, correct? 3 Α Yes. 4 Q Okay. Fuel. In this case, what, in 5 your opinion, was the fuel for the explosion? The aluminum dust. 6 7 Q And, again, the aluminum dust was 8 something that had been present in the system since it 9 started operating some seven years earlier, correct? 10 Α Yes. 11 And was there any difference on this day in terms of the characteristics of the aluminum 12 dust in the system? 13 14 I -- without, you know, analyzing the Α 15 dust, I would assume that the same equipment and their 16 process is the same day after day, and the dust is going to be the same every day that goes into it. 17 have no information of a process change that was made 18 prior to this or that had been made in the seven 19 20 years. All right. I am going to skip over 21 0 22 ignition source for just a second because I know you already mentioned the exothermic reaction there. 23 24 Dispersion of the dust cloud, is that a condition that

Page 39 1 procedures of the workers? 2 When I teach it and teach safe 3 operation of dust collectors, lockout/tagout is a big issue in it. 4 5 Okay. And are you familiar that with 6 lockout/tagout that it's the individual working on the 7 equipment that's responsible for making sure that's 8 Are you familiar with that standard? 9 Yes. And I don't know who locked out 10 what or how many locks were on it. 11 Q Okay. 12 Or what Federal-Mogul's internal procedures are or requirements. 13 14 Let's see. Now, this may be similar, 15 but the operational condition of the plant, I quess 16 that -- we are talking about the same thing, either -whether that's the machines or the dust collection 17 system. And, again, you were just provided the 18 information that there was a lockout and tagout, but 19 you are not -- you don't have any information as to 20 21 whether or not that was checked by the plaintiffs? 2.2 Α No. 23 Or who did it? Q 24 Α That was outside the scope --

```
Page 40
 1
                     Or whether it was actually done?
              0
 2
              Α
                     That was outside of the scope of what I
 3
     was looking at.
 4
              Q
                     You mentioned specifically water
 5
     vapor-generating equipment in the plant?
 6
              Α
                     Yes.
 7
                     Where did you get information about
              Q
     that subject?
 8
 9
                     From the proposal -- or from
10
     Federal-Mogul's specs on the original project, it
11
     required two dry dust collectors and then two wet dust
     collectors for the process, a different part of the
12
     process. A wet dust collector works by either
13
     spraying water into the air to take out the
14
15
     particulate or by running the air through a tank and
16
     through a bath to remove the particulate as well.
17
              0
                     Okay.
18
                     There was talking about -- then their
     specifications also had a sludge-handling equipment,
19
     which meant what was coming off of the dust collector
20
     is going to be a mixture of both particulate and water
21
22
     that's going to come out wet to be dried.
23
                     So just the inclusion of those two
24
     pieces of equipment in the general area, because they
```

```
Page 41
 1
     were all installed at the same time for this
 2
     production line, would mean there would be vapor --
 3
     free water vapor in the air.
 4
              Q
                     Okay. And that would be for the entire
 5
     plant?
 6
                     Well, I mean, you would have just in
 7
     the -- I looked at just the area of where they were
8
     doing the production side of it.
 9
                     Okay. With respect to the water
10
     vapor-generating equipment, okay, does that raise the
11
     relative humidity of the air for the entire plant?
                           Relative humidity is a number
12
              Α
                     Yes.
     that says just exactly what it is. It's relative to
13
     how much moisture does it have versus how much
14
15
     moisture can it have. So what it was actually doing
     was raising the entire dew point of the plant.
16
                     Didn't you do any calculations for the
17
     extent to which the dew point was raised in the
18
     plant --
19
20
              Α
                     No.
21
                     -- as a result of this equipment?
              0
22
                     Other than my experience with wet dust
              Α
23
     collectors is you are putting water vapor into the
24
     plant. You have got employees that are putting water
```

```
Page 42
 1
     vapor into the plant.
 2
              Q
                     Is there any way to test that?
 3
              Α
                     Yes.
 4
                     How would you test that?
 5
                     You can test versus the outside.
 6
     take a measuring device that's going to measure
7
     temperature and wet-bulb temperature or temperature
 8
     and absolute humidity. There is different devices
 9
     that you can tell how much moisture is being added.
10
                     And for this case, did -- did you do
11
     any type of model or any type of testing -- well,
                 Let me ask you this first: Are the water
12
     withdrawn.
     vapor-producing equipment that you referred to still
13
14
     operating at Federal-Mogul?
15
                     The understanding I had was the plant
     was running at -- up until the time it was shut
16
17
     down --
18
                     I'm sorry to cut you off. Not that
     day. I am talking about after the explosion and when
19
     you got the request to do your review in this case.
20
     Do you know, as of today or at any time since you have
21
22
     had it, whether or not that equipment is still being
23
     used?
24
              Α
                     I don't have any direct knowledge.
```

```
Page 43
 1
                     Okay. Have you done any testing or
              0
 2
     created any models to determine the extent to which
 3
     that particular equipment in the Federal-Mogul plant
 4
     would raise the dew point or increase the relative
 5
     humidity for the plant air?
 6
              Α
                     No, but I know how to do it. I do it
 7
     as part of my business. I just did not do it in this
 8
     case.
 9
                     So, as you sit here today, can you
10
     provide any basis for -- withdrawn. Can you tell us
11
     what the dew point was for the Federal-Mogul plant
     inside the plant on December 31 of 2010?
12
13
              Α
                     No.
14
                     Do you know whether or not the water
              0
15
     vapor-producing equipment was operating at
16
     Federal-Mogul on that day?
17
                     I have been told that it was.
18
                     Okay. Told by who?
              0
19
                     Again, when I asked the question was
              Α
     the plant operating, they said up to the time when it
20
     was shut down to start cleaning the ductwork.
21
22
                     And when you say the plant being shut
23
     down, is that the entire plant or --
24
              Α
                     No, the process.
```

Page 44 1 -- just the production line that was 0 2 for the aluminum dust, that created the aluminum dust? 3 Α My understanding was -- again, I didn't 4 check to see if the rest of the plant was running. 5 interest was in the lines that were served by that 6 dust collector. And if you were running the process -- if you were running the dry dust collectors, you 8 would have to be running the wet dust collectors to 9 handle another part of this same production line. 10 my assumption was is that since both of them were 11 running at that -- required to run, that it would be a requirement that both the dust collector and the wet 12 dust collector would be running. And, again, that's 13 based on how the system is currently designed or --14 15 and what was specified in Federal-Mogul's design 16 documents. Okay. And based on your prior answer, 17 it's your understanding that that particular line, the 18 aluminum dust ventilation system, including the water 19 vapor-producing equipment, had been shut down between 20 a half hour and an hour and a half before LCM started 21 2.2 its work? 23 Α Yes. 24 The fact that it's shut down, does that Q

Page 71 1 the area where the plaintiffs were working. 2 That could have been just by the 3 vacuum. It could have been by the flow. 4 Q Okay. 5 I guess any material flowing through a 6 pipe like that is going to cause a static buildup. 7 Just different materials dissipate it differently. 8 But you indicated previously that 9 that -- that the creation of the static electricity 10 and generation of sparks was a potential source of 11 ignition for combustion and explosion in this case? In -- it's a source of sparks and 12 Α having air going through a PVC pipe, yes, anything 13 that's ungrounded. Even ungrounded or unbonded steel, 14 15 you can still have the same issues. 16 Q Okay. Now, with respect to the explosion itself, in your report you indicate that the 17 number one fact that you relied upon here was the 18 testimony of Mr. Hodges that he saw an explosion in 19 20 the bag house; is that correct? He saw a fireball coming down the 21 22 ductwork. He said he could see past the backdraft -or backblast damper into the elbow, and he saw the 23 24 fireball originate from that point.

```
Page 72
 1
                     Okay. And what did you do to test that
              0
 2
     account from Mr. Hodges?
 3
              Α
                     The other thing I used in doing that
 4
     was the video and looked at the flashes and where
 5
     those flashes originated. And so by using that with
 6
     his reaction, I determined that the explosion had
7
     taken place in the duct -- in the bag house, not in
 8
     the ductwork, the initial explosion.
 9
                     Did you consider Mr. Hodges' statement
10
     to be reliable?
11
              Α
                     Yes.
12
              Q
                     Okay. And what was that based on?
                     Based on that he was there and seeing
13
          I have talked to other people that have been
14
     involved in them, in explosions and in flash fires,
15
16
     and found them to be very reliable in what they
               It may be something as easy as they saw,
17
     you know, bright orange flash coming out of a
18
     55-gallon drum and landing 30 feet or 40 feet away
19
     from the -- but they remember where the origin and
20
21
     what they saw.
22
                     Okay. And when Mr. Hodges stated that
23
     he could see that the fireball originated beyond the
24
     damper, or the flue or whatever he called it, okay,
```

```
Page 73
 1
     did that give you any information?
 2
              Α
                     That the fireball had originated in the
 3
     bag house.
 4
              Q
                     In terms of his description --
 5
     withdrawn. Do you recall what his description of the
 6
     damper was at his deposition?
 7
              Α
                     No, but I can look at it.
 8
                     THE WITNESS: Do you have a copy of his
 9
              deposition, for Hodges? I may have a copy,
10
              just that page.
11
                     MR. BROWN: No, not without my notes on
12
              it, but we can -- we can take a quick break
13
              and get a copy of these pages if you like.
14
              Want to do that?
15
                     MR. HUDGINS: What were you looking
16
              for?
17
                     MR. MORRIS: Let me see if I want --
18
                     MR. ALEXANDER: Does he want it?
19
20
     BY MR. MORRIS:
21
                     If you have his deposition, if you
22
     looked at Page 101 --
23
                     MR. BROWN: It's on a number of pages.
24
              It starts well before that.
```

```
Page 86
 1
              prejudiced.
 2
                     MR. ALEXANDER: You are right.
 3
              you.
 4
                     MR. HUDGINS: Without belaboring the
 5
              whole thing, I think everybody on this side
 6
              of the table would disagree that his
 7
              questions are misleading in any respect. And
              the witness who has indicated that he
 8
 9
              reviewed the record is in a position to agree
10
              or disagree with the foundation for his
11
              opinion.
12
                     MR. BROWN: I hear you. I made my
13
              objection. Unless you want to continue to
14
              make the argument, then why don't we move on.
                     MR. HUDGINS: That's all.
15
16
                     THE VIDEOGRAPHER: Off the Record.
17
18
                      (Discussion off the Record.)
19
20
     BY MR. MORRIS:
21
                     Mr. Schloss, thank you for your
     patience. Again, now, referring back to Chapter 17 in
22
23
     NFPA 921, one of the obligations that you have as an
24
     investigator is to test witness statements and, in
```

,		Page 8	35
1	know.		
2	So that is what my that's what my		
3	objection is, is that when you characterize		
4	it, you are characterizing him saying that		
5	this is the way it is. That is not an		
6	accurate characterization. With that, then		
7	you can go ahead and ask your questions. I		
8	just didn't want to do that in front of the		
9	witness.		
10	MR. MORRIS: I appreciate that. Thank	k	
11	you.		
12	MR. HUDGINS: Assuming we were at tria	al	
13	and you had just gone to the bench and made		
14	that same objection, wouldn't the response of	£	
15	the court be you're welcome to redirect your		
16	witness and bring that out as part of your		
17	case?		
18	MR. BROWN: My duty in a deposition is	3	
19	to, if I have a form of the question		
20	objection, then I have to bring that up. And	d	
21	I view this as being form of the question.	I	
22	think it's just misleading and incorrect. So)	
23	with that said, it's not being done in front		
24	of the witness, so nobody is being		

	Page 84
1	MR. BROWN: I want to make an objection
2	to your question, line of questioning, in
3	that it's mischaracterizing the deposition
4	testimony of Jeffrey Hodges, testimony as to
5	the condition of the or the location of
6	the hinge at the top. The question was on
7	Page 101: Was it a flap or a hinge at the
8	top? And the answer was: I don't know. I
9	know I could see that the flapper was in
10	there, and to me it looked like it pivoted
11	from the center, but I don't know. To
12	categorically say that he is testifying
13	affirmatively that, you know, absolutely this
14	is the way it is is a mischaracterization of
15	the evidence. The evidence is very clear
16	that what he was clear on because what he
17	says is in terms of the location of the of
18	the fire. It says on Page 75, But you are
19	clear in your mind that there was some fire
20	that came from behind the damper apparatus?
21	Answer: Yes, absolutely. So you have the
22	location of the fire coming from beyond there
23	absolutely. And in terms of the structure of
24	what he is seeing, he is saying he doesn't

```
Page 83
 1
                     Where it says witness observations, are
              0
 2
     you familiar with that section?
 3
              Α
                     Yes.
 4
              Q
                     Now, based on our discussion of
 5
     Mr. Hodges' testimony regarding his observations of
 6
     the backblast damper in addition to his observations
 7
     of the fireball, did you do anything to support or
 8
     refute his observations with respect to the condition
 9
     of the backblast damper?
10
              Α
                     I don't understand the question.
11
              Q
                     Okay. Having read that and heard his
12
     description that it was open at the top and it looked
     like it was hinged in the center, okay, did you do any
13
     follow-up in order to assess the -- to either support
14
     that statement or refute that statement?
15
16
                     MR. BROWN:
                                 Before you answer that
17
              question, I'd like to make an objection.
18
              may be a speaking objection. Let's go off
19
              the Record. Could you leave the room for
20
              just a moment?
21
                     THE VIDEOGRAPHER: Off the Record.
2.2
23
                      (Discussion off the Record.)
24
```

```
Page 82
 1
     any other eyewitnesses to the events.
 2
                     Okay. And did you ask whether or not
 3
     there were any other people present?
 4
                     I don't remember if I inquired on that
 5
     or not.
 6
                     Have you read any of the depositions of
7
     the LCM employees who are not plaintiffs in this case?
 8
              Α
                     No. Well, I did -- versus what's on
 9
     that list, there is other LCM employees.
10
     Collins -- ones I looked at were David Garard, Tommy
11
     Lee Bonds, Jeff Hodges, John Paul Spangler, Danny
     Collins, and Ed Thompson.
12
13
                     Okay. And was there any information
14
     other than from Mr. Hodges that you had in terms of
     specific facts and observations as to where the
15
16
     explosion occurred?
17
                     Not that I recollect.
18
                     Now, referring back to Schloss 1 again,
     if we look to -- let me get to it -- 17.3.3.15, which
19
     is on Page 162 at the top.
20
21
                     17?
              Α
22
                     .3.3.15. It will be at the bottom
              0
     right of Page 162.
23
24
              Α
                     Okay.
```

```
Page 81
 1
              Α
                     Yes.
 2
              Q
                      Okay. And under 17.1.2 we have -- it's
 3
     that determination of the origin of the fire involves
 4
     the coordination of information derived from one or
 5
     more of the following: 1, witness information.
 6
     analysis of observations reported by persons who
     witnessed the fire or were aware of conditions present
 8
     at the time of the fire, correct?
 9
              Α
                      Yes.
10
                     And you previously told us that the
     information that you have is from the depositions of
11
     the plaintiffs, correct?
12
13
                     And fact --
              Α
14
                     That's one, first?
              Q
15
              Α
                     I mean, Federal-Mogul.
16
                     And the deposition of Federal-Mogul was
              Q
     of David Garard, correct?
17
                      Yes.
18
              Α
                     But Mr. Garard, you are not aware of
19
20
     whether he was at the plant that day or not?
21
              Α
                     No.
22
              Q
                     Okay.
23
              Α
                     And I am not familiar with if anybody
24
     from Federal-Mogul was at the plant or if there was
```

```
Page 80
 1
     BY MR. MORRIS:
 2
              Q
                     Mr. Schloss, we were referring to NFPA
 3
     921, and we have marked as Schloss 1 for
 4
     identification today a portion of 921 that starts with
 5
     Chapter 17, origin determination. Do you see that?
              Α
 6
                     Yes.
 7
              Q
                      Okay. And would you agree that that's
 8
     a applicable standard for your investigation in this
 9
     case?
10
              Α
                     Yes.
11
                     And do you accept NFPA 921 as
              Q
     authoritative in terms of the investigation of fires
12
     and explosions?
13
14
                     Only in the combustible dust side of
15
          I don't know anything about investigating a house
16
     fire or a car fire or something along that.
17
                     Fair enough. As it relates to --
              0
18
                     As it relates to combustible --
              Α
19
                     -- your field --
              Q
20
              Α
                     -- dust and what I do, yes, it does.
21
                     Okay. And within Chapter 17, origin
              0
22
     determination, there is sort of a recap of the
23
     methodology and the scientific method for origin
24
     determination, correct?
```

```
Page 79
 1
     that it would be subject to criticism?
 2
              Α
                     Yes.
 3
              Q
                     And within NFPA 921 in I believe it's
 4
     Chapter 17, there is a section that deals with witness
 5
     statements, correct?
 6
                     To know what chapter and what page and
     what -- I am not familiar.
 7
 8
                     Let's see if we can get to it.
 9
                     MR. MORRIS: Okay. Let's mark this as
              Schloss 1.
10
11
12
                      (Deposition Exhibit Schloss 1 was
13
              marked and entered into the Record.)
14
15
                     MR. BROWN: Do you have a copy for me?
16
                     MR. MORRIS: I don't.
17
                     MR. BROWN: Let's just take a moment,
18
              and I'll make a copy. Does anybody else want
19
              a copy of the exhibit?
20
                     THE VIDEOGRAPHER: Off the Record.
21
22
                     (A recess was taken.)
23
24
```

```
Page 78
 1
     collector.
 2
                      So the only relevant fact that you took
     in order to rely on his testimony was the fact that he
 3
 4
     said he could see past the damper. The details of
 5
     that description were not important to you?
 6
                     No, they were not important to me.
 7
     mean, the bigger thing was is that he could see past
     the damper and see the elbow, and that's where he saw
 8
 9
     the fireball generate and come out.
10
              Q
                     Okay. I saw on your resume that you
     are a member of NFPA.
11
12
              Α
                     Yes.
                     And I understand that to be a member of
13
14
     NFPA, all you have to do is pay the dues?
15
              Α
                     That's right.
16
                     Okay. But you are familiar with NFPA
              Q
     921?
17
18
                     Yes.
              Α
                     And you use the scientific methodology
19
     as directed by NFPA 921?
20
21
              Α
                     Yes.
22
                     And if -- is it your opinion that if
              0
     the scientific methodology as set forth in NFPA 921 is
23
24
     not used in a investigation of a fire or an explosion,
```

```
Page 77
 1
     top or bottom?
 2
                     You couldn't tell where it was hinged.
 3
              Q
                     Could you tell whether it was at the
 4
     top of the duct or at the bottom of the duct where it
 5
     was open?
 6
                     What he saw at that distance, I don't
 7
     know.
 8
              Q
                     Okay. So --
 9
                      I just -- without reading and believing
10
     what he described, I used more of the concept that he
11
     could see past that and see the elbow.
                     Okay. Well, you said previously the
12
              Q
     fact that you had his -- his testimony that he saw a
13
     fireball from --
14
15
              Α
                    Yes.
16
                      -- beyond the damper, that you accepted
17
     that as true?
18
              Α
                     Yes.
19
                     Okay. We have testimony from him
              Q
     indicating that his observations of the damper, which
20
     he had been able to see for a period of time prior to
21
22
     the explosion occurring, was incorrect?
23
              Α
                      It was incorrect, but he still said you
24
     could see past it to see the elbow going to the dust
```

```
Page 76
 1
     it would make that much of a difference on him looking
 2
     at it.
 3
              Q
                     And do you recall him testifying as
 4
     follows: Question: Where you saw that you could see
 5
     a gap on the side, the top or the bottom.
 6
                     MR. BROWN: What page are you on?
 7
 8
     BY MR. MORRIS:
                     101 Line 5. The total question is:
 9
10
     That's what I am trying to find out, where you saw
11
     that you could see a gap on the side, the top or the
     bottom. I apologize for the paraphrase. Answer:
12
                                                          Ι
     could see over the top of it from the center up.
13
     you recall reading that in his deposition?
14
15
              Α
                     Yes.
16
                     Okay.
17
                     I don't remember what was just ahead of
18
     that.
19
                     Is that an accurate description of the
              Q
     configuration of the backblast damper?
20
21
                     No, but looking down 40 feet of
22
     ductwork with a flashlight, that may have been what
     his interpretation of what he saw is.
23
24
              Q
                     That you couldn't tell whether it was
```

```
Page 75
 1
     explosion.
 2
              Q
                     Okay. Where is the hinge located for
 3
     the flap?
 4
                     At the top of the flap.
 5
                     Do you recall reading in Mr. Hodges'
 6
     deposition when he was asked: Was the flap of the
7
     hinge at the top? And he answered: I don't know.
 8
     know that I could see the flapper that was in there,
     and to me it looked like it pivoted from the center,
 9
10
     but I don't know. Do you recall reading that?
11
              Α
                     Yes. Yes, I recall that.
12
              Q
                     Is that an accurate description of the
13
     damper?
14
                     From the -- the flap would have been
              Α
15
     hinged at the top. He may have been looking at the --
16
     I am not sure what his interpretation of the damper
     and the hinge was. I used more that he could see past
17
18
     that to see the elbow.
19
                     Do you recall that he testified that he
              Q
     thought it was a center hinge and that it moved both
20
21
     up and down? Do you recall that testimony?
22
              Α
                     Yes.
23
                     Okay.
              Q
24
              Α
                     I don't see where that -- the design of
```

```
Page 74
 1
     BY MR. MORRIS:
 2
                     For the purposes of my question, okay,
 3
     can you refer to Page 101?
 4
                     MR. BROWN: He would have to have the
 5
              deposition. I don't think he has the
 6
              deposition in there.
 7
                     THE WITNESS: I don't think I do.
 8
                     MR. BROWN: I think he quotes the
 9
              deposition in his report.
                     THE WITNESS: But I don't think I
10
11
              pulled that out separately.
12
     BY MR. MORRIS:
13
14
                     Mr. Schloss, let me ask you another --
                     Uh-huh.
15
16
                     Okay. Can you describe for me the
     construction of the backblast damper?
17
                     It's a rectangular box with -- in just
18
     general terms, rectangular box with round collars on
19
20
     either end to fit the ductwork, a incline blade that
21
     seals against a -- one of those collars to stop the
     transmission of energy back through the ductwork.
22
     It's made to be open while the equipment is running
23
24
     and the air is flowing across it and closed during an
```

```
Page 73
 1
     did that give you any information?
 2
              Α
                     That the fireball had originated in the
 3
     bag house.
 4
              Q
                     In terms of his description --
 5
     withdrawn. Do you recall what his description of the
 6
     damper was at his deposition?
 7
              Α
                     No, but I can look at it.
 8
                     THE WITNESS: Do you have a copy of his
 9
              deposition, for Hodges? I may have a copy,
10
              just that page.
11
                     MR. BROWN: No, not without my notes on
12
              it, but we can -- we can take a quick break
13
              and get a copy of these pages if you like.
14
              Want to do that?
15
                     MR. HUDGINS: What were you looking
16
              for?
17
                     MR. MORRIS: Let me see if I want --
18
                     MR. ALEXANDER: Does he want it?
19
20
     BY MR. MORRIS:
21
                     If you have his deposition, if you
22
     looked at Page 101 --
23
                     MR. BROWN: It's on a number of pages.
24
              It starts well before that.
```

```
Page 72
 1
                     Okay. And what did you do to test that
              0
 2
     account from Mr. Hodges?
 3
              Α
                     The other thing I used in doing that
 4
     was the video and looked at the flashes and where
 5
     those flashes originated. And so by using that with
 6
     his reaction, I determined that the explosion had
7
     taken place in the duct -- in the bag house, not in
 8
     the ductwork, the initial explosion.
 9
                     Did you consider Mr. Hodges' statement
10
     to be reliable?
11
              Α
                     Yes.
12
              Q
                     Okay. And what was that based on?
                     Based on that he was there and seeing
13
          I have talked to other people that have been
14
     involved in them, in explosions and in flash fires,
15
16
     and found them to be very reliable in what they
               It may be something as easy as they saw,
17
     you know, bright orange flash coming out of a
18
     55-gallon drum and landing 30 feet or 40 feet away
19
     from the -- but they remember where the origin and
20
21
     what they saw.
22
                     Okay. And when Mr. Hodges stated that
23
     he could see that the fireball originated beyond the
24
     damper, or the flue or whatever he called it, okay,
```

Page 71 1 the area where the plaintiffs were working. 2 That could have been just by the 3 vacuum. It could have been by the flow. 4 Q Okay. 5 I guess any material flowing through a 6 pipe like that is going to cause a static buildup. 7 Just different materials dissipate it differently. 8 But you indicated previously that 9 that -- that the creation of the static electricity 10 and generation of sparks was a potential source of 11 ignition for combustion and explosion in this case? In -- it's a source of sparks and 12 Α having air going through a PVC pipe, yes, anything 13 that's ungrounded. Even ungrounded or unbonded steel, 14 15 you can still have the same issues. 16 Q Okay. Now, with respect to the explosion itself, in your report you indicate that the 17 number one fact that you relied upon here was the 18 testimony of Mr. Hodges that he saw an explosion in 19 20 the bag house; is that correct? He saw a fireball coming down the 21 22 ductwork. He said he could see past the backdraft --23 or backblast damper into the elbow, and he saw the 24 fireball originate from that point.

```
Page 70
 1
              Α
                     No.
 2
              Q
                     Are you aware whether or not flexible
 3
     hose is manufactured so that it does have grounding
     material in it?
 4
 5
                     Yes, it does.
 6
                     In this case there is nothing to
 7
     suggest that this flexible hose had any grounding
     material in it, correct?
 8
                     I have no information on that.
 9
10
                     And then we get to the PVC pipe, or the
11
     lance as you referred to it. And was the use of PV --
     is the use of PVC pipe in cleaning aluminum dust
12
     ventilation systems appropriate?
13
14
                     It's nonconductive. So in anything
15
     that's combustible dust, you need to use conductive
16
     materials. PVC is not conductive, and I don't know of
     anything that's commercially available like that that
17
     is conductive.
18
19
                     Is it nonsparking?
20
                     It will -- it will not transfer a
              Α
21
             A spark will build up on the surface of the
22
     PVC, but it's not going to release a spark.
23
                     And, in fact, in this case the
              Q
24
     information we have is that it did generate sparks in
```

```
Page 69
    be conductive nonsparking material? Is that --
 1
 2
              Α
                     Yes.
 3
              Q
                     -- part of NFPA requirements? In this
 4
     case, we had the vacuum truck, which we have already
 5
     discussed. And then from that there was aluminum pipe
     that was attached to the vacuum truck, correct?
 7
                     Yeah, per my understanding and the
              Α
 8
    pictures.
 9
                     Would that aluminum pipe fit those
10
     requirements?
11
              Α
                     Yes.
                     Okay. The flexible hose that was used
12
              Q
    here?
13
                     There are flexible hoses that are
14
              Α
15
     conductive. I don't remember exactly whether the hose
16
     that was used at this point was conductive material or
     nonconductive construction.
17
                     You had an opportunity to see --
18
              Q
19
              Α
                     I saw it.
20
                     -- that hose?
              Q
                     I took a picture of it and was more --
21
              Α
22
     looked at the lance and the PVC there.
23
                     The flexible hose that was used, do you
              Q
24
     know whether or not that was grounded in any way?
```

Page 68

- 1 reporter, please wait until I finish my question 2 completely before you start your answer. I will do my 3 best to extend you the same courtesy and allow you to 4 finish your answer completely before I move on. If at 5 any time you feel that you have not finished your answer, please let me know, and we will make sure that 6 7 we get a complete record and one that we will all be 8 able to read for the benefit of our reporter, okay? 9 Α Thank you. 10 We were discussing the vacuum truck 11 previously and the equipment that was being used by the plaintiffs in their cleaning operation. 12 mentioned a few things, so I just want to go through 13 14 the equipment that was being used in terms of the bonding and grounding of the equipment. 15 With respect to the cleaning of ducts 16 involving aluminum dust ventilation system, would you 17 agree that you should use grounded and nonconductive 18
- 20 A Yes. NFPA requires that all of the 21 ductwork, both in that type of system, a vacuum 22 system, a dust collection system, be grounded and
- 23 bonded.

equipment?

19

Q And that whatever is being used should

```
Page 67
     going across that in that vacuum truck, going in the
 1
 2
     ductwork, not in the vacuum truck.
 3
              Q
                     Okay. And we do know that there was a
     fire or some type of explosion within the vacuum truck
 5
     itself, correct?
 6
                     Which -- yes.
 7
                     And that's not revealed on the video as
 8
     to when that occurred?
 9
              Α
                     No.
10
                     And we have no eyewitness information
11
     as to when that occurred in relation to any other --
12
                     Not that I am --
              Α
13
                     -- event of the explosion?
                     -- familiar with.
14
              Α
                     MR. MORRIS: I apologize. Can we take
15
16
              a quick break?
17
                     MR. BROWN: Sure.
                     THE VIDEOGRAPHER: Off the Record.
18
19
20
                     (A recess was taken.)
21
22
     BY MR. MORRIS:
                    Mr. Schloss, continuing on -- first,
23
24
     before we go further, at the request of our court
```

```
Page 66
 1
     you -- are you aware of that?
 2
              Α
                     No.
                          It may have been in deposition,
 3
     but I don't recollect it.
 4
              Q
                     Next question: So the only operating
 5
     machinery that we have in this closed system is the
     vacuum truck, correct?
 6
 7
              Α
                     Yes.
 8
                     Okay. And in your analysis, you -- you
 9
     didn't ask for any information or did not find any
10
     information as to any safety procedures in terms of
11
     grounding the truck and/or the system that were taken
     with respect to the vacuum truck, correct?
12
                          The vacuum truck -- the vacuum
13
                     No.
14
     truck itself is intrinsically safe. The ductwork and
15
     everything that's hooked up to it would be hard --
16
     would be hard to ground in that you have hose, you
     have PVC hose, and PVC pipe that you are using as a
17
            So you would not have a continuous bonded path
18
     from the time you are collecting it until the time you
19
     are getting to the vacuum truck.
20
21
                     Does that create --
              0
2.2
                     It creates --
              Α
23
                     -- any additional risk of --
              Q
24
              Α
                     It can create a potential of a spark
```

```
Page 65
 1
                     THE WITNESS: The system grounded or
 2
              the vacuum truck grounded?
 3
 4
     BY MR. MORRIS:
 5
                     Well, two things that -- we will go
     through that. First of all, there has been testimony
 6
7
     that there was no grounding of the truck itself, okay?
8
     What grounding of the system are you referring to?
 9
                     The grounding of the piping and
10
     everything off of the vacuum truck, from the vacuum
     truck out.
11
                     And in your investigation, is there any
12
              Q
     information that you have that any of the equipment
13
14
     that was connected to the vacuum truck was grounded?
15
              Α
                     No.
16
                     Okay. So we haven't -- so the truck
     isn't grounded and the system isn't grounded; is that
17
     correct?
18
              Α
                     Well, if the -- I don't understand the
19
     truck not being grounded.
20
21
                     There has been testimony that there is
22
     a specific method that they use in order to ground the
     truck, that they can take a ground wire and attach it
23
24
     somewhere.
                 That was not done in this case.
```

```
Page 64
 1
     points between the air that's being brought into it
 2
     and the air outside?
 3
              Α
                     No, because the friction that you are
 4
     going to -- the friction of sucking through all those
 5
     devices is going to heat that air up quite a bit. You
 6
     are going to end up with about a 2 degree rise for
7
     every horsepower that those vacuums pull.
 8
                     And the vacuum truck itself are
 9
     intrinsically safe, which means they are grounded,
10
     bonded, everything. It by itself is a safe operating
     -- if that wasn't true, you would be blowing up a lot
11
     of vacuum trucks.
12
                     All right. And did you read in the
13
     deposition transcripts in this case that the vacuum
14
15
     truck was not grounded at the time of its operation at
16
     Federal-Mogul?
17
                     I did not read that.
18
                     Okay. And so --
              0
19
                     But, again, being grounded as the --
              Α
20
              Q
                     Mr. Schloss, I am going to --
21
                     -- truck or the system being grounded?
              Α
2.2
                     MR. BROWN: He can answer the question.
23
                     MR. MORRIS: He did answer the
24
              question. He went beyond my question.
```

```
Page 63
 1
              Α
                     The vacuum truck, in my professional
 2
     experience, is a very safe device by itself.
 3
     only when you start hooking things up to it. So the
 4
     vacuum truck actually creating and originating the
 5
     explosion in the vacuum truck I ruled out.
 6
                     Okay. Well, my first question was:
 7
     Did you consider it as a potential source of ignition
 8
     for the explosion that occurred in this case?
 9
              Α
                     Yes.
10
                     Okay. And the vacuum truck,
11
     essentially, is similar to a bag house in that you are
     pulling the dust and debris into a collection system,
12
     correct?
13
14
              Α
                     Yes.
15
                     And as part of this operation, we have
16
     a closed system between the bag house, the ductwork,
17
     the --
18
              Α
                     Yes.
19
                     -- PVC pipe, the flexible hose, the
              Q
     aluminum pipe, into the vacuum truck, correct?
20
21
              Α
                     Yes.
22
                     The vacuum truck is outside similar to
              0
23
     the bag house. Would that be subject to the same
24
     situation in terms of the difference between dew
```

```
Page 62
 1
              factor? Was that the factor that -- of an
 2
              explosion? I don't see it.
 3
 4
     BY MR. MORRIS:
 5
                     Is it fair to say that in evaluating
 6
     all the potential causes of the explosion here that
     eventually you came down to two possible causes, one
7
     being the generation of the static electricity by the
 8
 9
     use of the PVC pipe by the plaintiffs, or, as you
10
     mentioned earlier, an exothermic reaction in the bag
     house?
11
12
              Α
                     Yes.
                     And you were able to eliminate every
13
14
     other cause at that point?
15
              Α
                     I'd have to go back through that list
16
     of what I gave you, but, I mean, that was really --
     really, at that point it came down to the video and my
17
     opinion or my interpretation of the video of which
18
     flashes were the bag house exploding and what flash
19
     was the stuff coming back down the ductwork.
20
21
                     Now, did you consider -- just consider
22
     as part of your evaluation here whether or not the
23
     vacuum truck could have been a potential source of
24
     ignition for this explosion?
```

Page 61 1 No. I looked at -- you know, looked at Α 2 the devices, you know, looked at a piece of PVC pipe 3 and the hose and the duct and how they had it all 4 hooked together and, you know, you can generate a 5 spark --6 Q Okay. Α -- with the --MR. BROWN: Excuse me. Let him finish 8 9 his answers. Please don't talk over him. 10 THE WITNESS: You can generate a spark 11 in it. Whether every other condition was 12 there at the time of the spark is really --13 you know, again you are vacuuming something 14 in, so you are not generating a dust cloud. 15 You are sucking the dust cloud into it. You 16 are vacuuming, you know, the -- you are 17 vacuuming, you know, where the PVC will flow through any type of -- any type or any type 18 19 of material is going to cause a static 20 buildup. PVC is not recommended to use for 21 that. You know, yes, there was things that 22 were not safe that were going to generate 23 sparks or less safe than they could have 24 been, but was that, you know, a contributing

```
Page 60
 1
     your --
 2
              Α
                     Yeah.
 3
              Q
                     -- prior investigations and otherwise,
 4
     that had they been following proper safety procedures,
 5
     you could have eliminated that as a cause; is that --
     is that fair?
 6
 7
                     You can never eliminate a hundred
              Α
 8
     percent of the risk of doing something like that even
 9
     safely, you know, following every safety procedure.
10
                     I have a chemical plant that I do work
11
     in that had six people clean out a dust collector, a
     welder strike an arc, and get burned across the faces.
12
     You know, they met every one of their safety
13
     requirements. They had everything -- he had the
14
     proper PPE on. Luckily, it didn't burn his eyes, but
15
     burned the hair off of his face.
16
                     And in this case, did you evaluate all
17
     of those things as well?
18
                     I was told about it. I didn't evaluate
19
              Α
20
            It was for a customer that I was doing some
21
     work with and an --
22
                     No, no, in this case.
              0
23
                     -- incident they talked about.
              Α
24
              Q
                     I understand.
```

```
Page 59
                     -- cause that has to be considered in
 1
              Α
 2
     my evaluation.
 3
              Q
                     And as part of that analysis, you have
 4
     to look at what equipment is being used?
 5
              Α
                     Yes.
 6
                     And what potential there is for that
 7
     creating a -- an environment in which there could be
 8
     an explosion, correct?
 9
              Α
                     Yes.
10
                     And in this instance, in looking at
11
     that and determining whether or not the equipment that
     was being used for the cleaning of the aluminum duct,
12
     did you reach any opinions as to whether or not that
13
     was a potential cause?
14
15
                     It was potential cause of -- what they
16
     were doing could cause an explosion, yes. In terms of
     if you isolate just that one part of it, yes, that
17
     would --
18
19
                     But that's part of your analysis?
20
              Α
                     Yeah.
                            If you isolate and say they were
     taking a piece of PVC and putting it -- hooked to a
21
     vacuum truck, putting it into aluminum, there is a
22
23
     cause there that you are going to generate sparks.
24
              Q
                     And based on your experience and
```

```
Page 58
 1
           And you would agree with me, as we said before,
 2
     that you have to go through all possible causes and
 3
     eliminate them through scientific --
 4
              Α
                      Yeah.
 5
              0
                      -- methodology pursuant to NFPA 921,
 6
     correct?
 7
              Α
                      Yes.
 8
                      Okay. One of those causes could be the
 9
     actions of the workers in this case. Could be,
10
     correct?
11
                      It was generating sparks and --
              Α
                      Okay. Just -- will you agree with
12
              Q
13
     me --
14
                      If you want me to stop right there,
              Α
15
     that that's as far as you want me to go --
16
              Q
                      I want you to answer my question right
17
     now.
18
              Α
                      Okay.
                      My question is: The actions of the
19
              Q
     plaintiffs, of the LCM employees, that is a potential
20
     cause that has to be considered in your evaluation
21
22
     of --
23
              Α
                      That is potential --
24
                      -- this explosion?
              Q
```

```
Page 57
 1
     potential causes for the explosion.
 2
                     And can the failure to follow proper
 3
     safety procedures be a contributing cause to an
 4
     explosion?
 5
                     How about rephrase the question?
 6
                     Sure. Do you need to eliminate the
7
     improper use of equipment or a failure to follow
 8
     necessary safety procedures as a cause of an
 9
     explosion?
10
                     I look at what they were doing as a
11
     cause of an explosion. How they picked them and the
     decision that they made to pick those types of devices
12
     doesn't really matter. It's -- it's what was
13
     physically being done at the time of the explosion.
14
15
              0
                     Okay. And in this particular instance,
16
     did you reach any opinion as to whether or not the
     actions of the plaintiffs could have caused or
17
     contributed to the explosion that occurred?
18
19
              Α
                     I don't -- in my professional opinion,
     it didn't contribute to the explosion in the dust
20
21
     collector.
22
                     Not my question.
              0
23
              Α
                     Okay.
24
                     I understand what your final opinion
              Q
```

Page 56 1 Well, in evaluating the potential 0 2 causes of an explosion, would one of the factors be 3 what the individuals were doing and whether or not 4 they were taking appropriate safety procedures before 5 you reach your final opinion? 6 Before -- I looked at what they were 7 doing, not what they were trained to do. I looked at --8 Okay. Well --9 10 -- devices they were using on the 11 cleaning when we did the field -- looked at it in the field and looked at the devices they used and the hose 12 and tubing and things like that. I looked at those. 13 I did not look at whether they were trained in -- they 14 may have been trained, and that's the decision they 15 16 made to use those equipment. It doesn't necessarily mean training equals results. 17 And for the purpose of this question, I 18 am not asking about their training. I am asking about 19 actually what they were doing and whether or not they 20 followed proper safety procedures, if that's a factor 21 22 that you would consider in evaluating the potential causes for this explosion. 23

I evaluated what they were doing as

24

Α

Page 55 1 I understand. But based on your 0 2 experience where you have evaluated explosions and you 3 have trained people on how to work around these types 4 of systems --5 If I was contracted with LCM, I 6 would -- I would have evaluated their systems. And if they were deficient, I would have made the 7 8 recommendations to do the training. 9 Did you read in the deposition 10 transcripts that the supervisor of the job was aware 11 that aluminum dust was the product in the system they were cleaning? Do you recall that? 12 Yes, that it was -- aluminum dust was 13 14 the product. Whether he realized that aluminum dust was combustible, I didn't see that. 15 16 Q Okay. And if he testified that he was not aware that aluminum dust was combustible, do you 17 have an opinion as to whether or not that is a safe 18 procedure for LCM to proceed in cleaning the ducts at 19 20 Federal-Mogul? 21 Well, really, I am not here to evaluate 22 what LCM did, you know, and -- you know, and whether they trained their people onto it. I can only look at 23

the results of what that was.

```
Page 54
 1
     very strong about teaching of -- training of your
 2
     employees.
 3
              Q
                     And have you evaluated Federal-Mogul's
 4
     training procedures for its employees relating to the
 5
     aluminum dust ventilation system?
 6
                     I have seen in Federal-Mogul's
 7
     combustible dust management guidance and the
     management program where they talk about that. I have
 8
 9
     looked at what -- what's available at that point, but
10
     no farther than that.
11
                     Okay. And what about LCM? Did you
     evaluate their --
12
13
              A
                     No.
14
                     -- procedures with respect to working
     on an aluminum dust ventilation system?
15
16
              Α
                     No.
17
                     And why not?
                     My understanding from reading the
18
     depositions, I guess, was is that they were not
19
     advised of the risk of aluminum combustible dust.
20
21
     actual workers that were on the platforms were not
22
     advised of combustible dust. Again, whether LCM is,
23
     you know, negligent at that point or liable for that
24
     point, I am not here to talk about that.
```

```
Page 53
 1
                     More likely than not.
              Α
 2
              Q
                     -- the function of the system, it was
 3
     able to handle those small explosions if it did occur?
 4
              Α
                     But you don't design for small
 5
     explosions.
 6
                     That's not my question at this point.
 7
     I understand --
 8
              Α
                     That's my answer. That's my answer at
 9
     this point is is you can have explosions in anything
10
     that's not going to result in the damage or even
11
     triggering any, you know, explosion protection device.
     It depends on what the dust is at that moment, what
12
     the ignition source is at that moment, how much
13
     dispersion you have at that moment, how much volume of
14
15
     material you have. All those things together are
16
     going to determine how strong of an explosion do you
17
     get.
18
                     And would you agree with me that when
     you are working with an aluminum dust ventilation
19
     system, that whoever is working on that should be
20
     aware of the risk of explosion in a system of that
21
22
     type?
23
              Α
                     Federal-Mogul is required to teach
24
     their people the risks around that. I mean, NFPA is
```

```
Page 52
 1
     going to burn anything. You can get exothermic
 2
     reaction of a bigger pile of dust, and it may catch it
 3
     on fire.
 4
              0
                     I understand that. I understand that,
 5
     but what -- if I understand what you have told me is
 6
     that there could have been prior exothermic
 7
     reactions --
 8
              Α
                     There could have.
 9
                     -- in the bag house that resulted in
10
     smoldering and then, for whatever reason, fizzled out
11
     or stopped.
12
              Α
                     Yes.
                     Because if it continued, we would have
13
     seen something else occur. There could have been
14
15
     exothermic reactions that led to a small explosion
16
     that went undetected because no one was in the area to
     see it, hear it, or --
17
18
              Α
                    And not be --
19
                     -- know it happened?
              Q
20
                     And not be strong enough to activate
              Α
21
     the explosion vents.
22
                     Right, okay. So all I am saying is
              0
23
     that if that occurred, and you say that's a
24
     possibility that it did occur, that in terms of --
```

Page 51 1 BY MR. MORRIS: 2 I will adopt probability. 3 Α I have been in a plant that did shot 4 blasting, and I asked and said, Have you ever had an 5 explosion? They said, No, but every now and then our 6 dust collector goes plump and the sides pulse out. 7 You know, have they been having explosions? Yes. They just didn't have one at a high enough degree that 8 9 was going to cause the thing to rip apart or, you 10 know, the vents to actuate. You could have had 11 exothermic reactions for all those seven years that 12 would have went undetected and not cause an explosion. It could have been the first time in seven years there 13 was an exothermic reaction. 14 15 So based on that then, in terms of the 0 16 explosion containment of that, if that did occur, then 17 the system operated properly on those prior occasions, correct? 18 19 Α No. I mean, no, because it may not 20 have met -- it may not have resulted in an explosion. 21 It may not have resulted in a fire. 22 Well --0 You can have exothermic reaction of a 23 Α 24 small pile of dust that's sitting there, and it's not

Page 50 1 things line up that's going to happen. 2 of bag houses explode for no apparent reason. 3 Why did they explode that day versus 40 years 4 prior to it? You know, a lot of times there 5 is no real definite answer and say, well, it 6 blew up this day because of this and it blew 7 up this day -- you know, why didn't it do for 8 the last 40 years? So it -- all those things 9 have got to come together at one time. 10 11 BY MR. MORRIS: 12 0 And I understand that. That's why I am 13 asking you -- you can't say to a reasonable degree of engineering certainty as to why it did not occur on 14 any other prior day, even though the same conditions 15 16 may have been present? 17 It may have --Before you answer, form of 18 MR. BROWN: 19 the question objection. You asked about 20 engineering certainty, and that's certainly 21 not what the standard is. It's probability. 22 MR. ALEXANDER: Reasonable degree of 23 engineering probability. 24

Page 49 1 opinion that the conditions for an exothermic reaction 2 and the other -- as an ignition source and the other 3 elements that would lead to an explosion were present 4 in that bag house? 5 Α 6 All right. And as you sit here today, 7 you cannot give an opinion with a reasonable degree of 8 engineering certainty as to why an explosion would not 9 have occurred on any day prior to this? 10 Well, it really depends on if the 11 equipment -- if the dust collector itself is running, is operating. You are moving warm air across the 12 steel, so you have less condensation. 13 If it's running, you know, it's -- an explosion is a perfect 14 15 storm. All those things have got to come together. 16 Q Well, let me --17 MR. BROWN: Excuse me, he is not 18 finished answering yet. 19 MR. MORRIS: I think he is going beyond 20 the question. That's why -- so --21 MR. BROWN: He is entitled to finish 2.2 his answer. 23 THE WITNESS: I think an explosion is a 24 perfect storm. You have to have all these

- 1 exothermic reaction then isn't dependent on additional
- 2 water. Once it starts that reaction, it's going to
- 3 keep heating itself. It's all self-contained.
- 4 Q Okay. Well, then, based on what you
- 5 have told us so far, when this ventilation system
- 6 started operating back in 2003 or so and you had those
- 7 conditions, are you saying that an exothermic reaction
- 8 very likely would have started back in 2003?
- 9 A If you have the same situation that you
- 10 have there that day, that's very possible or, in my
- 11 opinion, would happen.
- 12 Q Okay. Well --
- 13 A In my opinion, you would have that
- 14 same -- whether it would have resulted into a fire or
- 15 an explosion really would have been dependent on the
- 16 material in the bag house.
- 17 Q I think that's obviously where we are
- 18 going to get to next is -- and, again, the ignition
- 19 source we come to is why on this day was there a
- 20 confluence of factors that occurred here. And I am
- 21 not asking the question yet, but that's obviously
- 22 where I am going.
- 23 Previously, based on your testimony and
- 24 based on the conditions that were there, is it your

Schloss (Morris)

Page 47 1 set it down, pretty soon the water starts condensing 2 on the outside of it and going -- running down the 3 sides of your Coke can. Okay. 4 Take the same Coke can when it's 20 5 degrees outside, and the water does not form because 6 the temperature of the Coke is higher than the dew 7 point temperature of the air around it. Reversing that and putting the moisture 8 9 on the inside of the bag house in a cold skin 10 temperature with steel that has very rapid temperature 11 exchanges, you are going to have a -- the bag house is going to cool very quickly down to that outside 12 temperature and then the dew point, and you are going 13 to start having sweating on the inside of that bag 14 15 house. It can sweat on the bags. It can sweat on the 16 sides, in the hoppers. 17 If -- if the bag house is shut down for an extended period of time, for more than the up to 18 hour and a half that we have here, let's say 24 hours, 19 20 48 hours or longer, does that affect the -- that situation with the condensation? 21 22 Once the condensation is into the 23 material, in the case with metal, as in aluminum, you 24 are going to start exothermic reactions.

```
1
                     Depending on the -- one, if the bag
 2
     house is operating, and two is is what the outside
 3
     conditions are. If the bag house is not operating
 4
     or -- or if it's cold outside, depending on what the
 5
     outside temperature and the dew points are, you will
 6
     start to condense on the inside of the bag house.
 7
                     A lot of processes that are in
 8
     metal-producing plants, you insulate the bag house to
 9
     keep that transfer from happening so that you don't
10
     end up with the skin temperature dropping below the
11
     dew point temperature and condensing water into it.
                     Okay. And what if -- okay. Is there
12
              Q
     any similar type of situation that would occur when
13
14
     the temperature outside is hotter than it is inside?
15
              Α
                     No.
16
                     Okay. So the difference in dew
     point -- you could have a difference in dew point --
17
18
                     Two things. One is the outside
     temperature, which is going to determine what the
19
20
     temperature of the steel in the bag house is and what
     your inside humidity is on the -- on the bag house.
21
22
                     To use an example, if you have a Coke
     can in the middle of the summertime, and the Coke is
23
24
     40 degrees inside the can, you walk outside and you
```

1 have any effect on the amount of -- or will that have 2 any effect on the dew point for the interior of the 3 Federal-Mogul plant? 4 Over time it would. In that amount of time, I don't think you would see -- my personal or my 5 6 professional opinion is you wouldn't see much of a 7 change in it. Again, too, by having that 8 water-producing equipment, it was producing water 9 while it was running as well. So the dust collector 10 would have been seeing that moisture over an extended 11 period of time. 12 So, again, that -- whenever it was operating over the seven years before, you are 13 14 indicating that there would have been moisture in the 15 air that was being transported into the bag house? 16 Α Yes. Is that correct? Okay. And that the 17 moisture that's being transported, if it's shut down 18 for a short period of time, such as a half an hour to 19 an hour and a half, would have no effect on the 20 moisture being transferred to the bag house? That's a 21 22 bad question. Let me withdraw that. Let me ask

another question. The -- the water vapor that gets to

the bag house, what happens to it when it's in there?

23

Page 44 1 -- just the production line that was 0 2 for the aluminum dust, that created the aluminum dust? 3 Α My understanding was -- again, I didn't 4 check to see if the rest of the plant was running. 5 interest was in the lines that were served by that 6 dust collector. And if you were running the process -- if you were running the dry dust collectors, you 8 would have to be running the wet dust collectors to 9 handle another part of this same production line. 10 my assumption was is that since both of them were 11 running at that -- required to run, that it would be a requirement that both the dust collector and the wet 12 dust collector would be running. And, again, that's 13 based on how the system is currently designed or --14 15 and what was specified in Federal-Mogul's design 16 documents. Okay. And based on your prior answer, 17 it's your understanding that that particular line, the 18 aluminum dust ventilation system, including the water 19 vapor-producing equipment, had been shut down between 20 a half hour and an hour and a half before LCM started 21 2.2 its work? 23 Α Yes. 24 The fact that it's shut down, does that Q

```
Page 43
 1
                     Okay. Have you done any testing or
              0
 2
     created any models to determine the extent to which
 3
     that particular equipment in the Federal-Mogul plant
 4
     would raise the dew point or increase the relative
 5
     humidity for the plant air?
 6
              Α
                     No, but I know how to do it. I do it
     as part of my business. I just did not do it in this
 7
 8
     case.
 9
                     So, as you sit here today, can you
10
     provide any basis for -- withdrawn. Can you tell us
11
     what the dew point was for the Federal-Mogul plant
     inside the plant on December 31 of 2010?
12
13
              Α
                     No.
14
                     Do you know whether or not the water
              0
15
     vapor-producing equipment was operating at
16
     Federal-Mogul on that day?
17
                     I have been told that it was.
18
                     Okay. Told by who?
              0
19
                     Again, when I asked the question was
              Α
     the plant operating, they said up to the time when it
20
     was shut down to start cleaning the ductwork.
21
22
                     And when you say the plant being shut
23
     down, is that the entire plant or --
24
              Α
                     No, the process.
```

```
Page 42
 1
     vapor into the plant.
 2
              Q
                     Is there any way to test that?
 3
              Α
                     Yes.
 4
                     How would you test that?
 5
                     You can test versus the outside.
 6
     take a measuring device that's going to measure
7
     temperature and wet-bulb temperature or temperature
 8
     and absolute humidity. There is different devices
 9
     that you can tell how much moisture is being added.
10
                     And for this case, did -- did you do
11
     any type of model or any type of testing -- well,
                 Let me ask you this first: Are the water
12
     withdrawn.
     vapor-producing equipment that you referred to still
13
14
     operating at Federal-Mogul?
15
                     The understanding I had was the plant
16
     was running at -- up until the time it was shut
17
     down --
18
                     I'm sorry to cut you off. Not that
     day. I am talking about after the explosion and when
19
     you got the request to do your review in this case.
20
     Do you know, as of today or at any time since you have
21
22
     had it, whether or not that equipment is still being
23
     used?
24
              Α
                     I don't have any direct knowledge.
```

```
Page 41
 1
     were all installed at the same time for this
 2
     production line, would mean there would be vapor --
 3
     free water vapor in the air.
 4
              Q
                     Okay. And that would be for the entire
 5
     plant?
 6
                     Well, I mean, you would have just in
 7
     the -- I looked at just the area of where they were
8
     doing the production side of it.
 9
                     Okay. With respect to the water
10
     vapor-generating equipment, okay, does that raise the
11
     relative humidity of the air for the entire plant?
                           Relative humidity is a number
12
              Α
                     Yes.
     that says just exactly what it is. It's relative to
13
     how much moisture does it have versus how much
14
15
     moisture can it have. So what it was actually doing
     was raising the entire dew point of the plant.
16
                     Didn't you do any calculations for the
17
     extent to which the dew point was raised in the
18
     plant --
19
20
              Α
                     No.
21
                     -- as a result of this equipment?
              0
22
                     Other than my experience with wet dust
              Α
23
     collectors is you are putting water vapor into the
24
     plant. You have got employees that are putting water
```

```
Page 40
 1
                     Or whether it was actually done?
              0
 2
              Α
                     That was outside of the scope of what I
 3
     was looking at.
 4
              Q
                     You mentioned specifically water
 5
     vapor-generating equipment in the plant?
 6
              Α
                     Yes.
 7
                     Where did you get information about
              Q
 8
     that subject?
 9
                     From the proposal -- or from
10
     Federal-Mogul's specs on the original project, it
11
     required two dry dust collectors and then two wet dust
     collectors for the process, a different part of the
12
     process. A wet dust collector works by either
13
     spraying water into the air to take out the
14
15
     particulate or by running the air through a tank and
16
     through a bath to remove the particulate as well.
17
              0
                     Okay.
18
                     There was talking about -- then their
     specifications also had a sludge-handling equipment,
19
     which meant what was coming off of the dust collector
20
     is going to be a mixture of both particulate and water
21
22
     that's going to come out wet to be dried.
23
                     So just the inclusion of those two
24
     pieces of equipment in the general area, because they
```

Page 39 1 procedures of the workers? 2 When I teach it and teach safe 3 operation of dust collectors, lockout/tagout is a big issue in it. 4 5 Okay. And are you familiar that with 6 lockout/tagout that it's the individual working on the 7 equipment that's responsible for making sure that's 8 Are you familiar with that standard? 9 Yes. And I don't know who locked out 10 what or how many locks were on it. 11 Q Okay. 12 Or what Federal-Mogul's internal procedures are or requirements. 13 14 Let's see. Now, this may be similar, 15 but the operational condition of the plant, I quess 16 that -- we are talking about the same thing, either -whether that's the machines or the dust collection 17 system. And, again, you were just provided the 18 information that there was a lockout and tagout, but 19 you are not -- you don't have any information as to 20 21 whether or not that was checked by the plaintiffs? 2.2 Α No. 23 Or who did it? Q 24 Α That was outside the scope --

```
Page 38
 1
                     -- and were told either by plaintiffs'
              0
 2
     counsel or --
 3
              Α
                     Either in deposition or that it was
 4
     locked out and tagged out. That was also part of
 5
     LCM's proposal is that the lockout/tagout would be by
 6
     Federal-Mogul.
 7
                     And while we are talking about
 8
     lockout/tagout, are you offering any opinions with
 9
     respect to the safety procedures followed by the
10
     plaintiffs or LCM in their work here?
11
                     No, other than I know, you know, safe
     work around the -- around combustible dust. I teach
12
          I do seminars on it.
13
14
                     So, for example, Mr. -- I want you to
15
     assume Mr. Hodges testified at his deposition that he
16
     did not check to see whether or not the Federal-Mogul
17
     equipment was locked out or tagged out or whether the
     bag house -- the dust collecting system had been
18
     locked out and tagged out. You are not here to offer
19
20
     any opinion as to whether that's proper procedure or
21
     otherwise; is that correct?
22
                     I have no information on that.
              Α
23
                     Okay. Is that something that would be
              Q
24
     within your expertise, to evaluate the safety
```

```
Page 37
 1
     I have seen between a half hour and an hour and a
 2
     half.
 3
              Q
                     Do you remember where you got that
     information from?
 4
 5
                     No. It could have been provided by
 6
     counsel.
 7
                     In what form? By --
              Q
 8
              Α
                     Just asking a question and statement.
 9
     Or it may have been in one of the depositions.
10
     not sure.
                     But did you do anything to verify that
11
     other than either being told by counsel or maybe
12
     reading it in one of the depositions?
13
14
                     No. I didn't contact the plant or
15
     anybody at that point. I requested -- I mean, I
16
     requested that information, and that's what I was
17
     told.
18
                     I guess the other one similar to that
     was whether or not the dust collector system was
19
     operating at the time, correct?
20
21
              Α
                     Yes.
22
                     Okay. And that's information that you
              0
     asked was it on at the time --
23
24
              Α
                     I have seen that --
```

Page 36 1 go through and eliminate the potential sources of 2 ignition, correct? 3 Α Yes. 4 Q And when you do that, do you have a 5 process whereby you go through eliminating the least 6 likely to the most likely? Or do you go most likely? Do you have a process to do that? 7 8 I look at what the impact of each one 9 of them would be and whether that was available, you 10 know, that -- like say the process equipment, whether 11 it was running or not. If it's not running, then that's -- eliminates it as a source. I look through 12 each one of them equally to make that decision. 13 14 So based on the list that you gave me, 15 it's fair to say that there were some that you easily 16 eliminated as a source of ignition? 17 Yes. 18 First being the Federal-Mogul equipment because, based on the information provided to you, 19 20 that equipment had been shut down that day, correct? 21 Uh-huh, yes. Α 22 And do you know how long it had been 0 23 shut down for prior to the work on the ductwork? 24 Α I was told anywhere from a half hour --

```
Page 35
 1
              Α
                     If they were -- if there was a reason
 2
     as a flashlight breaking or any source -- external
 3
     source of electrical spark.
 4
              Q
                     Okay.
 5
                     If the dust collectors were operating,
 6
     which I am told they were not, that they were
 7
     electrically locked out. Again, the type of material,
     the aluminum dust.
 8
 9
                     Okay. Anything else?
10
                     The condition of settling in the
11
     ductwork of the aluminum dust. You know, if there was
     an ignition source from the process equipment, which I
12
     am told was locked out.
13
14
                     When you say process equipment, you
     mean the Federal-Mogul equipment?
15
16
              Α
                     The Federal-Mogul equipment, not the
     dust collection. NFPA will tell you ignition sources
17
     are free. You can never design all the ignition
18
     sources out of a system. You could have a short
19
20
     circuit. You can have lightning come in on it.
     is a lot of different sources of ignition.
21
2.2
                     Understood. And --
              0
23
                     Exothermal.
              Α
24
                     Sure. And part of your process is to
              Q
```

```
Page 34
 1
     documents, did you have various possible causes that
 2
     you were considering?
 3
              Α
                      Yes.
 4
              Q
                     And can you tell me what causes you
 5
     were looking at or what sources of ignition you were
 6
     looking at as the cause of the explosion?
 7
              Α
                      When I looked at the entire system --
 8
     and, again, taking the video out of it, I looked at
 9
     the role of what the workers would have been doing.
10
                     When you say the workers, who are you
11
     referring to?
                     The three individuals that were
12
              Α
     injured, the two --
13
14
                      The LCM employees, the plaintiffs, not
15
     the Federal-Mogul employees?
16
              Α
                     No, the LCM employees.
                     Okay. So you look at what were the
17
     plaintiffs doing.
18
19
              Α
                      What were the weather conditions, what
     was the operational condition of the plant.
20
21
              0
                     Okay.
22
              Α
                      Was there water-generating or vapor --
     water vapor-generating equipment in the plant.
23
24
              Q
                     What else?
```

```
Page 33
 1
     operating. Is that fair?
 2
              Α
                     Based on that information, the
 3
     information provided, yes.
                     Based on the information that you have
 4
              0
 5
     had to reach your opinion, that's -- that's the key to
 6
     determining what the cause of this explosion was,
 7
     correct?
 8
              Α
                     Yeah.
                            Yes.
 9
                     Okay. And in determining what the
10
     ignition source was, that would also help to determine
     where the origin of the explosion was as well,
11
12
     correct?
13
                     Yes. Again, looking at the video --
              Α
14
                     Well, there is no question before you.
              Q
15
     There is no question before you, so --
16
              Α
                     That could be carrying off from the
17
     last one, so...
18
                     Okay. So in terms of your
     investigation of this incident, is it fair to say that
19
     you came to a point where you had to focus on what was
20
     the source of ignition for the explosion on December
21
22
     31?
                     Yes.
23
              Α
24
                     And at your initial review of the
              Q
```

```
Page 32
 1
     was no.
 2
              Q
                     Okay. So -- and again just to go back,
 3
     so the dispersion of the dust cloud was a condition
 4
     that would have been present on any day prior to this
 5
     as well, correct?
 6
              Α
                     Yes.
 7
              Q
                     Okay. Containment. When you say
 8
     containment, what are you referring to?
 9
              Α
                     The dust collector itself.
10
                     And when you say the dust collector, is
              0
11
     that --
                     The enclosure of the bag house.
12
              Α
                     So that's not the 55-gallon drum that's
13
              0
14
     at the bottom? Or is that part of it?
15
              Α
                     It could be. It could be. If it's not
     isolated, that's included in that volume as well.
16
17
                     Okay. And, clearly, that containment
     system had been present since the system had been
18
     installed and operated?
19
20
              Α
                     Yes.
                     So the only -- only factor that we have
21
22
     to consider is what's the source of ignition in terms
     of what's different on this day to cause the explosion
23
24
     than any other day that this system has been
```

Page 31 is present on a daily basis in this system? 1 2 Α Yes. And a dust collector is a perfect 3 product classifier. The heavy particles fall down 4 onto the -- into the hopper. The light particles go 5 up onto the bags. The filtration is actually provided 6 by a dust cake on those bags. It's like your home furnace filter. About the time that you look at it 7 and it's all dirty, it's finally starting to work. 8 9 at that point you -- using the dust is actually what's 10 providing the filtration efficiency on the dust. 11 dust collector in normal operation is going to pulse off that dust down into the -- into it, but, also, a 12 dust collector that's shut down will experience dust 13 14 falling off of the bags over a period of time. 15 0 So fair to say that the bags don't get 16 rid of everything while it's on? 17 And they don't clean while it's -while it's -- they don't completely clean when you 18 19 turn it off. 20 Q Okay. You can also end up with buildup on the 21 22 walls of the dust collector. And I think in one of

the depositions it was asked had the dust collector

ever been cleaned or the bags changed, and the answer

23

```
Page 30
 1
     That's something that is present at all times and had
 2
     been present in this system every day, correct?
 3
              Α
                     Yes.
 4
              Q
                     Okay. Fuel. In this case, what, in
 5
     your opinion, was the fuel for the explosion?
                     The aluminum dust.
 6
 7
              Q
                     And, again, the aluminum dust was
 8
     something that had been present in the system since it
 9
     started operating some seven years earlier, correct?
10
              Α
                     Yes.
11
                     And was there any difference on this
     day in terms of the characteristics of the aluminum
12
     dust in the system?
13
14
                     I -- without, you know, analyzing the
              Α
15
     dust, I would assume that the same equipment and their
16
     process is the same day after day, and the dust is
     going to be the same every day that goes into it.
17
     have no information of a process change that was made
18
     prior to this or that had been made in the seven
19
20
     years.
                     All right. I am going to skip over
21
              0
22
     ignition source for just a second because I know you
     already mentioned the exothermic reaction there.
23
24
     Dispersion of the dust cloud, is that a condition that
```

1 In the -- by having a dust collector 2 that's handling combustible metals, especially, it's 3 important that the dust collector not have 4 condensation on the inside of the dust collector. 5 Based on the weather data that I 6 reviewed as well as the fact that the plant has wet 7 dust collectors that will be adding moisture to the 8 air on the inside of the plant, that the probability 9 -- or, in my opinion, is is that the dust collector 10 was condensing. The material that was in there had a 11 exothermic reaction. The exothermic reaction caused 12 the explosion. And all of those things are independent of what they were doing in the ductwork or 13 14 what somebody was doing on the other end of the plant. 15 0 Okay. Let's -- well, let's go through 16 what was present on that day. And I will ask this in a -- I may ask this a couple ways. So if I say it in 17 a confusing way, please let me know. 18 19 Α Okay. 20 Q I will rephrase the question, or we 21 will repeat it back so that we make sure that we are 22 talking about the same thing. 23 You said five things need to be present 24 for an explosion to occur. The first one is oxygen.

```
1
     the explosion occurred on that day?
 2
              Α
                     Explosions don't really pick what day
 3
     they want to happen. It's a coming together of, you
 4
     know, multitude of things all at one time. Nobody
 5
     gets up and schedules one for 10 o'clock in the
 6
     morning. So it could have -- it could have happened
     that day, and it could have went 40 more years without
7
 8
     running.
 9
                     Okay. Well then --
10
                     The length of time really doesn't --
11
     the length of time that the equipment has been running
     does not make it any safer. I have a lot of customers
12
     that say, well, we have run 20 years without an
13
     explosion. Say, well, yep, you ran 20 years without
14
15
     an explosion, and you had one. What happened in the
16
     first 20 years.
                     Well, I guess that's where I am going
17
     next is, then what are the factors that need to be
18
     present or were present on December 31, 2010, that, in
19
20
     your opinion, brought about this explosion?
21
                     To have an explosion, you need five
22
             You need oxygen, you need fuel, you need an
     ignition source, you need dispersion of the dust
23
```

cloud, and you need containment.

```
Page 27
 1
     know, based on all of those things and where I
 2
     determined the explosion originate, it would have made
 3
     no difference if they were working on it or not
 4
     working on it.
 5
                     Okay. Why is that?
              0
 6
                     Because I don't think they had -- in my
7
     professional opinion, the explosion didn't originate
 8
     at the employees. It originated in the dust
 9
     collector, and there was nothing that the employees
10
     were doing that was going to change that fact or
11
     contribute to it in the dust collector per my
     findings.
12
                     All right. And this ventilation system
13
14
     had been operating for approximately seven years --
15
              Α
                     Yes.
16
                     -- prior to this day?
                     Uh-huh.
17
              Α
                     Okay. Were there any conditions that
18
     were present on December 31, 2010, that were different
19
20
     than any other day that it had been operating up until
21
     then?
22
                     I don't have that information.
              Α
23
                     Okay. Do you have an opinion with a
              Q
24
     reasonable degree of engineering probability as to why
```

```
Page 26
 1
                     Okay. If Mr. Hodges, Mr. Bonds, and
              0
 2
    Mr. Spangler were not present cleaning the ductwork at
 3
     Federal-Mogul on December 31, 2010, would that
 4
     explosion have occurred?
 5
                     Could that explosion have occurred, or
 6
     would that --
7
                     I am asking first would that.
8
              Α
                     It's possible that the explosion could
    have occurred based on the information that I have
 9
10
           The role that the employees played in that
11
     decision -- or in that explosion, it's -- I would say
    based on what I found, it could have exploded without
12
     them being there. That's my -- my professional
13
     opinion is, is from what I saw and working on
14
     different dust collectors like that that there's a
15
16
    possibility that that could happen.
17
                     Okay. So to put it another way, I
     suppose -- well, let me go into another question with
18
            Do you have an opinion as to whether or not any
19
     of the actions taken by the plaintiffs that day in
20
     cleaning the ductwork caused or contributed to the
21
22
     explosion occurring specifically on that day?
                     From my analysis of the explosion and
23
              Α
24
     of the equipment and the videotape and the -- you
```

Page 25 1 that correct? Are those two different things, or is 2 that the same? 3 Α Yes, it's two different things. 4 Q All right. Let me ask you this 5 question: In -- I understand that this was a -- the 6 event took place on December 31 of 2010, correct? 7 Per the information that I have been Α 8 handed, yes. 9 Okay. And that was at the 10 Federal-Mogul plant in Blacksburg, Virginia, correct? Per the information that I have been 11 Α 12 provided, yes. So my question to you is: Would this 13 event have occurred on December 31, 2010, whether or 14 15 not the plaintiffs were at the Federal-Mogul plant 16 that day? 17 Can you clarify? I don't understand. 18 Sure. We know an explosion occurred on that day, and we know that the three plaintiffs were 19 20 there for LCM cleaning the ductwork. My question is: Was -- would that explosion have occurred on December 21 22 31, 2010, whether or not the plaintiffs, as LCM 23 employees, were there cleaning the ductwork that day? 24 Α Try one more time.

Page 24 1 been a component in making those decisions. 2 looking at the actual equipment that as it was destructed, it wouldn't have changed my opinion of the 3 4 designs. 5 Okay. And, again, I am trying to 6 separate two parts out here, because part of your 7 opinion seems to be that the ventilation system 8 itself -- that you were reviewing its design at the 9 outset. 10 Α Uh-huh. 11 Whether it was capable of performing Q the functions that it was intended to do at that time; 12 13 is that correct? That's one aspect? 14 Based on the information that was available. 15 16 Q Okay. 17 Publicly available at that time. All right. The second thing that you 18 0 are referring to here is looking at the event of the 19 explosion itself. 20 21 Α Yes. 22 And whether or not the component parts 23 that had been selected as part of that design were 24 appropriate based on that event and what occurred; is

1 information to make a determination is, was the 2 information that would have been available at the time 3 that the equipment was selected, if that was -- if the 4 equipment was selected for that -- you know, based on 5 that information or also reviewing the explosion is 6 did a higher pressure or a higher Kst did the 7 equipment experience in the explosion. 8 Is it fair to say that if you had that 9 information, you could give a more precise or a more 10 certain opinion with respect to the design of the 11 ventilation system? It would have been part of making the 12 Α analysis of it, but it wouldn't have changed the 13 14 outcome of my opinion. 15 Okay. Why not? 16 Because the equipment -- the destruction of the equipment indicated that the -- in 17 the case of the dust collector, that the vent weren't 18 properly -- or weren't large enough to release the 19 vents, and the dust collector tore itself apart or had 20 structural failure. In the case of the back blast 21 22 damper, it structurally failed due to the pressures. 23 Again, that doesn't -- changing --

changing knowing what the dust going into would have

```
1
     the application.
 2
              Q
                     And since that information is not
 3
     available, does that have any impact on your certainty
 4
     or your opinion as to what you have expressed in your
 5
     report here?
 6
                     It has had an impact in what was the
 7
     final -- or the initial design information to -- and
 8
     by -- let me get my thoughts together here.
 9
                     Well, let me see if I can ask it more
10
     specifically. You said one of the things that you
11
     were reviewing was the design of the system itself.
     How would knowing the composition of the dust affect
12
     your opinion in this case on the design of the system?
13
14
                     It would determine if the dust
15
     collection equipment and the dust collection system
16
     was capable of withstanding the pressures and the
     selection of the equipment would react fast enough for
17
     the type of dust that was -- it was asked to filter.
18
19
              0
                     And without that information, were you
20
     able to reach an opinion as to the design of the
21
     system?
                     Based on the destructive forces that I
22
              Α
23
     observed on the equipment -- and, again, this is based
24
     on -- this is what I do all the time. Backed into the
```

Page 21 1 Minimum ignition energy that it would 2 take to ignite it, minimum explosive concentrations, 3 things that you would use to analyze the dust and the 4 proper selection of the equipment. 5 For the ventilation system itself? For the ventilation system itself, 6 7 including the dust collector, ductwork. And why would that be important to your 8 9 final opinion? 10 To determine the cause of the 11 explosion; determine the severity of the explosion in the dust collector, in the backdraft damper, and in 12 the ductwork; to determine the origin of the explosion 13 as well as severity of the dust cloud that was -- or 14 15 the gasses that were given off by it. 16 Q And, again, so you are referring to dust that was collected in the ductwork itself as well 17 as the dust that was present in the bag house at the 18 time? 19 20 Α Yes. The reason that is is to properly select the equipment and the explosion protection, you 21 22 have got to know the numbers of the Kst, which is rate 23 of pressure rise over rate of time, and pressure 24 maximum to decide the selection of the equipment for

Page 20 1 And can you explain to me what you mean 0 2 by dust testing of the aluminum dust? 3 Α The dust test would have been provided 4 by a company similar to Chilworth, Fenwal, where they 5 actually run the chemical characteristics and have --6 explode the dust to measure what the rate of rise of 7 the pressure over time, delta P over delta T, which is 8 used in calculating Kst, and also Pmax, which is the 9 maximum pressure involved in the explosion. I was told that the dust had not been 10 11 tested prior to that, that there was dust that -there was dust samples available. But due to the time 12 since the explosion, unless it was really tested prior 13 to the explosion, anything after that point wouldn't 14 15 give you an accurate representation of what was in the 16 dust collector or the ductwork at that time. 17 Okay. And, again, sometimes I will need to go and clarify just so that I understand. 18 Your interest in finding out was what the components 19 were of the dust that was described as being in the 20 vents at the time of the explosion, correct? 21 22 Both components and the chemistry of Α 23 it, what the explosive values of the material was. 24 Q All right.

Page 19 1 Α No. 2 Q Have you had any personal interviews 3 with any other LCM employees, such as Danny Collins? 4 Α No. 5 Prior to preparing your report for 6 plaintiffs' counsel, did you request any additional 7 information that was not provided to you? You know, 8 let me withdraw that and ask it another way. Have you 9 asked for any information from plaintiffs' counsel 10 that has not been provided to you? 11 Α There is nothing that I have asked for that's not been provided to me. To give you a more 12 full answer, on the -- what I reviewed and the 13 information is in my report on Pages 7, 8, 9, and 10. 14 So that's more of a total listing of what I received 15 16 and what I reviewed. And I understand that. 17 I understand what you did use. I am just asking if there was 18 something that you asked for that you were told either 19 it doesn't exist or we don't have it or we will get it 20 21 for you, anything like that. 22 The only information that I asked for that was -- that I was told was not available was dust 23 24 testing of the aluminum dust prior to the explosion.

Page 18 1 from witnesses who were present at the time of the 2 event? 3 Α The reports that I see from OSHA are 4 usually at the citation level, not at the 5 investigation level. 6 Would you agree with me that having 7 statements from witnesses who were present at the time 8 of the event is important in a full evaluation of the 9 causes of an event such as this? From the information that I have seen 10 11 and the depositions that I have read, I felt those were the key players in the evaluation of the 12 explosion and didn't require any additional workers or 13 any additional information. 14 15 Have you ever read any statements from 16 any Federal-Mogul employees who were present at the time of the explosion? 17 I am not sure if David Garard was at 18 the -- present at that time or not. 19 20 Q And David Garard is the only 21 Federal-Mogul employee whose statements --2.2 That I can recollect right now. Α 23 Q Have you ever had any personal 24 interviews with any of the plaintiffs in this case?

```
Page 17
 1
    provided.
 2
              Q
                     Did you have any reports regarding the
 3
     investigation of the explosion?
 4
              Α
                     By?
 5
                     By the Blacksburg Fire Department, by
 6
     OSHA, by any governmental agency.
 7
                      I have looked at the -- and this was
              Α
     when we got in to do the site visit and the analysis
 8
 9
     of the -- of all the information, I looked at the fire
10
     department's evaluation. Did not look at OSHA's
     evaluation.
11
                     Is there some reason you have not
12
              Q
13
     looked at the OSHA report?
14
              Α
                     No.
                     Would that contain information that
15
              Q
16
     would be helpful to you in reaching a hypothesis or an
17
     opinion in this matter?
                      I don't feel that OSHA would have
18
     anything in their report that would be more than what
19
20
     was provided by the other information that I got.
21
                     Are you familiar with OSHA reports that
     are done in situations such as this?
22
23
                     Yes.
              Α
24
                      Do those reports contain statements
              Q
```

```
Page 16
 1
     first time?
 2
              Α
                     I think August, early August.
 3
              Q
                     Of this year?
 4
              Α
                     Of this year.
 5
                     So between November of 2011 and August
 6
     of 2013, there was a continuous stream of information
7
     being provided to you by the plaintiffs' counsel?
                     Yes. I mean, not every day did I
 8
              Α
 9
     receive something on it, but it may go two or three
10
     months and I would review something, and then maybe a
11
     month later I'd end up reviewing something.
                     Okay. Prior to your first visit to the
12
              Q
     site in August of 2013, at that point -- prior to that
13
     time, what written information or documentation did
14
     you have other than what we have already discussed,
15
16
     which is the video, the deposition transcripts of the
     plaintiffs and the Federal-Mogul employees, and the
17
     design --
18
19
                     Design information.
              Α
20
                     -- information and the exhibits from
              0
     the depositions?
21
                     The order information from -- for
22
              Α
     Dustex, the order information for Kirk & Blum, all
23
24
     relative documents about the equipment of what was
```

Page 15 1 in the system, make sure that it was -- met the 2 function required, NFPA requirements, or the safe 3 operating. Q You said earlier independent review of 5 all the information. At this point in time, all 6 you've told me that you have received were the 7 depositions of the plaintiffs and the Federal-Mogul 8 employees and the exhibits with those depositions. 9 Α I guess the --10 Is that correct? 0 11 Α The initial part of it, the initial contact would be to do that independent review. 12 the depositions came in and requested different 13 information that was provided, I reviewed that 14 15 information. But the scope of what my direction was 16 was to take a look at the total system and analyze the 17 system and its components. 18 Is it fair to say that in order to 0 analyze the system and its components, then all you 19 needed was the deposition exhibits and the design 20 plans that you referred to? 21 22 And also to visit the site, look at the Α 23 equipment. 24 Q When did you visit the site for the

Page 14 1 specific aspect of the incident? 2 Α No. 3 Q Were you asked the question like we'd 4 like to hear your opinion on what the cause of the 5 explosion was or some other aspect of this? 6 No. What I was asked for was an 7 independent review of all the information with really 8 no pressure to say here is what your answer needs to 9 be in the end of it. A big part of my business is 10 providing that for manufacturing companies, is review 11 what they have to see if it's in compliance or where they are deficient. 12 13 And that's where I was going, whether 14 they were asking you to evaluate, for example, the ventilation system that was in place to determine 15 16 whether or not it was in compliance, if that was the request, or if the request was can you provide us your 17 opinion on the function of the various components of 18 19 the system in the explosion that occurred. 20 In both of those. In our business when Α 21 we do an analysis, we look at each piece of equipment. 22 If I was called into a plant to look at their dust 23 collection system to see if it was in compliance, we 24 would look at the total system and then each component

Page 13 1 when I received any of the information. It's just 2 been ongoing. Other than the deposition transcripts, 3 Q 4 in terms of your initial review of the case, was there 5 anything else that you referred to when you first were retained? 6 7 Α No. Did there come a point in time that you 8 9 requested additional documents from plaintiffs' 10 counsel for your review? 11 Α Yes. 12 What documents did you request? Just design information from Dustex, 13 14 and I think it's more of the -- along the line of exhibits that were in -- or information that was in 15 16 the depositions. 17 And again referring to the depositions of the plaintiffs and the Federal-Mogul employees? 18 19 Α Yes. Again, the exact timeline of when I received what, I could go back and reconstruct it 20 maybe from e-mails or telephone conversations, but I 21 22 don't really recollect when that was -- happened. When you were first retained to review 23 Q 24 the case, were you asked to focus your review on any

```
Page 12
 1
     you found news reports about the explosion that
 2
     occurred at the Federal-Mogul plant as part of your
 3
     ongoing professional duties?
 4
              Α
                     Yes.
 5
                      Did there come a point in time that
 6
     plaintiffs' counsel provided you with a factual
 7
     background regarding their clients and/or the
     incident?
 8
 9
              Α
                     Yes. At what time or the dates, I am
10
     not sure.
                      I'm more interested in what -- what
11
              Q
     information was provided to you.
12
                     Started -- the best of my memory, it
13
14
     started with depositions.
15
                     Okay. And depositions of?
16
                      Depositions of the employees that were
     injured, depositions from Federal-Mogul's employees.
17
18
                      Did you receive those -- were they
     transcripts of the depositions?
19
20
              Α
                     Yes.
21
                     And did you receive those before you
22
     received any other written materials relating to this
     incident?
23
24
              Α
                      I really don't have a good timeline on
```

```
Page 11
 1
     for this case?
 2
              Α
                     No.
 3
              Q
                     Was that done by another meeting, a
 4
     phone call, a letter?
 5
                     Best I can remember, another phone
     call.
 6
 7
                     Were you given any additional
              Q
 8
     information about the case through that phone call?
 9
                     No, just to discuss the -- whether I
10
     was interested in working with them on the case.
11
                     And was there a general discussion of
              Q
     what the case was about at that time?
12
13
              A
                     Yes.
14
                     Can you tell me what you recall about
     that conversation?
15
16
                      I also knew from news reports what the
     case was about as well.
17
                     And had you looked at the news reports
18
     on your own or at the request of Mr. Brown and
19
20
     Mr. Johnson?
21
                     On my own in that I do a lot on web
22
     sites and with the chemical safety board. I am not
     sure where it would have come up at.
23
24
              Q
                     Okay. And again so that I am clear,
```

```
Page 10
 1
     case that you were working on?
 2
              Α
                     Uh-huh.
 3
              Q
                     And while you were having that meeting,
     there was a discussion about this case?
 5
                      Yes.
 6
                     And after viewing the video, did you
 7
     offer any opinions or information on what further
     documents or data you would need?
 8
 9
                     No, not at that time.
10
                     All right. Did there come a point in
     time that you were retained to review additional
11
12
     documents in this case?
13
              Δ
                     Yes.
14
                     When was that?
              Q
15
                      I am not real sure of the dates, but
16
     would have been within the last year.
                     You said the case was first mentioned
17
     to you in November 2011?
18
19
              Α
                     Yes.
20
                      So sometime during 2012 was when you
              0
     were contacted, or was it in 2013?
21
22
              Α
                      I don't recollect.
23
                     Do you have any documents that would
              Q
24
     refresh your recollection as to when you were retained
```

```
Page 9
 1
                      I think November of 2011.
              Α
 2
              Q
                     Who was it that contacted you?
 3
              Α
                     Mr. Brown and Mr. Johnson.
 4
              Q
                     Was that in person or by phone?
 5
              Α
                      In person.
 6
                     And was that here in Roanoke or at your
 7
     offices in South Carolina?
                      It was in Hilton Head while I was on
 8
              Α
     vacation.
 9
10
                     MR. ALEXANDER: Only you?
11
12
     BY MR. MORRIS:
                     Prior to that meeting, had you received
13
     any contact, any documents, any information about the
14
     case?
15
16
              Α
                     No.
                     Can you tell me what information you
17
     were provided about the case at that first meeting.
18
19
              Α
                     We were -- just reviewed video of the
20
     explosion, discussed just the video, and that was the
21
     extent of it. The main part of the meeting was for a
22
     different case I was working with Mr. Brown on.
                      I see, okay. And just so that I am
23
              Q
24
     clear, so the meeting was set up to discuss another
```

```
Page 8
 1
     today, did you bring any written materials with you?
 2
              Α
                     Other than the report and just really
 3
     what's been issued, no. Nothing else in writing. No
 4
     notes.
 5
              Q
                     When you say issued, what -- what are
     you referring to?
 6
 7
                     The report that I issued.
                     Okay. Do you have any documents that
 8
              0
     have been provided to you by plaintiffs' counsel?
 9
10
              Α
                     Yes.
                     What documents do you have that were
11
              Q
     provided to you by plaintiffs' counsel?
12
13
                     They were detailed in the report.
14
                     Okay. So in the report there is a
15
     listing of all the references in terms of documents
     related --
16
17
              Α
                     Yes.
                     -- to this case. And other than those,
18
     you have no other documents?
19
20
              Α
                     At this time I cannot think of any
     other documents that I was provided since then.
21
22
                     Can you tell me when you were first
              0
23
     contacted by plaintiffs' counsel with respect to this
24
     matter?
```

```
Page 7
 1
     Doug Edwards?
 2
              Α
                      Yes.
 3
              Q
                      Who is Doug Edwards?
 4
              Α
                      Doug Edwards was my counterpart in
 5
     Cincinnati.
                  He was the director of engineering and
     was responsible for the engineering portions of
 6
 7
     Kbd/Technic in Cincinnati.
 8
                      And during the time that you worked at
 9
     Kbd/Technic, did you ever work on any projects
     together with Mr. Edwards?
10
11
              Α
                      Yes.
                      And can you tell me what each of your
12
     roles were in those projects?
13
14
              Α
                      I would either be lead designer and he
15
     would be a support or the other way around, and I
16
     would provide engineering support for -- on his
     projects.
17
                      Okay. So it's a collaborative effort
18
              Q
19
     for --
20
                      Collaborative effort.
              Α
21
                      And that would be for a client of
              0
     Kbd/Technic?
22
23
              Α
                      Yes.
24
                      With respect to your deposition here
              Q
```

```
Page 96
 1
              Α
                     He is a good engineer.
 2
              Q
                     Are you familiar with his reputation in
 3
     the industry?
 4
              Α
                     He is, again, a good engineer.
 5
              0
                     And did you read the report from
 6
     Richard Roby?
7
                     Yes. I reviewed it as well.
              Α
 8
                     Do you know Richard Roby?
 9
              Α
                     No.
10
                     Are you aware that he is a member of
     the committee for NFPA 921?
11
                     No, but I also know other members of
12
              Α
     the committee.
                     That may not make them an expert in
13
     anything more than being on the committee.
14
15
                     Absolutely. I just didn't know --
16
                     I don't really think that buys you much
     credentials on that.
17
18
                     So can you explain to me, what is
     confirmational bias?
19
20
                     I am not familiar with the term.
              Α
                                                         Ι
     know it's in 921 in the definitions. I know there is
21
22
     a section on confirmational bias, but to sit here and
     quote it -- if you want to get out 921, I can show you
23
24
     where it is and tell you what it says.
```

- 1 into the plant. Imagine that the fireball is like a 2 big balloon. Anyplace that you put a hole in that 3 balloon, you are going to get equal flow out of. It's 4 looking for the least -- it's looking for the easiest 5 way out. If you build a enclosure that can withstand 6 the explosive forces without any problem and don't do 7 it and don't put anything on the inlet, that fireball 8 and all those gasses is going back into your process where it's going to pick up fresh fuel. You are going 9 to have secondary explosions and, in this case, a 10 11 tragic incident. Now, in this particular case, one of 12 Q the parts that we are referring to is my clients' 13 backblast damper. Within the ventilation field, okay, 14 what does blast mean? 15
- 18 Q And does it distinguish between what

Blast means that it's going to stop a

- 19 that is a blast, whether it's a blast of air or an
- 20 explosion? Is there a difference?

Α

blast.

16

- 21 A A blast -- it could be the pressure
- 22 wave ahead of the blast. The difference is a backflow
- 23 preventer is something that closes when the fan shuts
- off to prevent air from going back into the building

```
1
     based on that you have denser colder air on the
 2
     outside of it, less dense air on the inside of it, and
 3
     it's going to find equilibrium. So there are two
 4
     different types of devices. One is a backflow
 5
     preventer.
                 The one is a backblast preventer.
 6
                     In 2002 was that a distinguishing
 7
     description of those parts?
 8
                     In my -- in my view and my expectations
 9
     as a designer, of an engineer of those systems, I
     would know the differentiation between those two
10
11
     systems.
                     Okay. So if someone orders a backblast
12
              Q
13
     damper, okay, from a catalog --
14
              Α
                     It better -- if they are advertising it
15
     as a backblast damper, then it better meet the
16
     requirements that are required to withstand a
     explosion that's inside that dust collector. All the
17
     components of the dust collection system need to be
18
     capable of withstanding that explosive pressure.
19
20
              Q
                     In your report, there is a couple --
21
     couple places where you define the purpose of a
22
     backblast damper as a device to prevent an explosion
23
     from propagating through dust; is that correct?
24
              Α
                     That could -- I am sure it says that in
```

```
Page 148
 1
     determine what the rate of propagation for the flame
 2
     was?
 3
              Α
                     No, not on this specific case, no.
 4
              Q
                     Okay. Is there a set formula that you
 5
     would use for that?
 6
                     Deflagration is a flame front moving at
7
     less than the speed of sound. The speed of sound is
 8
     quite high, so it's going to move very quickly through
 9
     that ductwork.
10
                     So between the time that Mr. Hodges
11
     says he sees the fireball and the time that it reaches
12
     the open end of the duct where he is standing, can
13
     you --
14
                     Milliseconds.
              Α
15
                     Well, okay. Based on your experience
16
     and to a reasonable degree of engineering probability,
     can you tell us how long it would take for the
17
     fireball to get to Mr. Hodges --
18
19
                     I can calculate it, but I don't have it
              Α
     with me here.
20
21
              0
                     Okay.
22
                     But I can calculate you -- calculate
     that. Again, the rate of the fireball is also
23
24
     dependent on the chemical characteristics of the dust.
```

Page 158 1 accumulation at any particular point in that hopper? 2 I didn't investigate exactly where that 3 point would be in the hopper or in that dust 4 collector, no. 5 And you didn't do any test to determine 6 how the angle of the hopper might affect the particular material that was --7 8 Α Without having the -- without having 9 the material and the characteristics of the material 10 -- you can run a test where you can test what the 11 angle of repose is, when it will start to become free-flowing. Without the material available, it's 12 not possible to do that test. 13 14 The bag house is designed so that the 15 material collects and goes down the slopes of the 16 hopper into a steel drum? 17 Yes. 18 Now, the explosion didn't start in the steel drum, did it? 19 20 Α Again, I didn't -- I didn't pinpoint where it could have started. You have a lot of fuel 21 22 into it. My understanding from the information was that in the time it was -- at the time that they ran 23 24 the dust collector, they never emptied the 55-gallon

Page 161 1 have been in this bag house with the particular 2 material that was in place there? 3 Α I would know -- I would know if they 4 had had it tested. 5 But you didn't get a sample, so you 0 6 don't know? 7 Α And it was never tested prior to the 8 explosion. 9 So you do agree that you don't know? 10 I agree that I don't know, but it's 11 information that if you did have it, you would use it in your evaluation. 12 All right. Now, in your scenario, the 13 explosion began in the bag house, and there were --14 15 was a shock wave and then followed by a fireball that 16 traveled back through the ductwork and back through the -- and pushed open the backblast damper and went 17 through the ductwork and burned the plaintiffs? 18 19 Well, it took many paths. The same Α fireball could have went -- the same fireball would 20 have went down into the 55-gallon drum. 21 22 fireball would have went out through the fan. 23 Anyplace -- the same fireball -- when the vent did

open up, the fireball went out it. When the side of

Page 163 1 That's why NFPA requires that you have 2 minimum conveying velocities in your ductwork so you 3 do not have a buildup of dust anywhere in those systems. 4 5 So what I was getting to is: Do you 6 have an opinion as to whether or not there was any 7 combustion of material that was in the ductwork 8 between the backblast damper that we have talked about today and the open end where the two plaintiffs were 9 10 standing? 11 Α In my opinion, yes, there would be combustion because you have fresh fuel and you have --12 but it wouldn't be dependent -- dependent on them 13 14 stirring it up. You are looking at a pressure wave 15 that's moving at the speed of sound is a lot -- is 16 going to generate a lot more turbulence and a lot more 17 dust pickup than anything they could do with that 18 lance. 19 All right. Now, as I understand your Q 20 expert opinion with regard to Dustex, you believe that 21 the blast doors were too small for this application? 22 My calculations show they were. Α 23 Q All right. Had the blast doors been of 24 the size that you specify in your report, which were I

```
Page 202
                     -- to explain how it ended up where it
 1
              Q
 2
     did?
 3
              Α
                     No.
                          Just that the -- that the
 4
     explosive forces were greater than the P-ultimate of
 5
     the bag house due to the observations of the failure.
 6
                     Did you make any attempt to calculate
 7
     the duration of the explosion from the point of
     ignition --
 8
 9
              Α
                     No.
10
                     -- to the point where the pressure --
              0
11
              Α
                     No.
12
                     Let me finish. -- from the point of
              Q
     ignition, the point in time of ignition, to the point
13
     in time when the pressure had returned to basically
14
15
     atmospheric.
16
                     No.
                          Without knowing the dust
     characteristics of how fast that would go, how fast it
17
     would take to explode, you can't calculate it.
18
19
                     Looking at the Exhibit 15 and 16 that
              Q
20
     refer to a backblast damper, is it your testimony that
     the term "blast" in -- as was used for the description
21
22
     of that K&B device refers to as a synonym of an
     explosion?
23
24
              Α
                     I would say that if it says blast, that
```

```
Page 208
 1
                     Other than I saw this is what Dustex
 2
     recommends as the correct solution for what their
 3
     problem is. It was part of their proposal was a
 4
     statement in there saying that was the right -- you
 5
     know, this is the right equipment for your
 6
     application.
 7
              Q
                     So proposal --
                     So I'm assuming -- I am assuming --
 8
              Α
 9
              0
                     Proposal and Garard's testimony?
10
              Α
                     Yeah.
                     MR. BROWN: That's been asked --
11
12
                     THE WITNESS: And specifications.
                                                          I
13
              mean, there is -- I guess I don't understand
14
              the breadth of the question.
15
     BY MR. ALEXANDER:
16
                     Did you make any attempt to quantify
17
     the duration of time or the amount of heat that would
18
     be required under the weather conditions that morning
19
     to precipitate an explosive reaction?
20
21
              Α
                     No.
22
                     Minimum energy ignition --
              Q
                     Without the chemical composition of the
23
              Α
24
     dust, you can't calculate it.
```

```
Page 235
 1
     BY MR. BROWN:
 2
              Q
                     Maybe you didn't understand.
 3
              Α
                      I'm losing my train of --
 4
                     MR. HARBERT: Let's start tomorrow
 5
              morning, gentlemen. My time is up.
                     MR. BROWN: I don't want to leave this
 6
 7
              question hanging right here.
 8
                     THE WITNESS: Let's do it one more
              time.
 9
10
11
     BY MR. BROWN:
                     Okay. My question is: Not absolutely
12
              Q
     100 percent certainty, but to a reasonable degree of
13
     probability, are you still able to tell us where the
14
     most likely portion of the origin of the explosion is?
15
16
              Α
                      I can still -- the origin of the
     explosion was based on exothermic reaction, not the
17
     size of the particulate.
18
19
                     So does the -- not having the size,
              Q
     precise size, of the particulate, does that in any way
20
21
     impair the opinions that you have got --
22
              Α
                     No.
23
                     -- in your report?
              Q
24
              Α
                     No, it does not.
```

Page 234 1 impossible for you to come up with an opinion to a 2 reasonable degree of engineering probability as to the 3 origin of this fire? 4 Start over again. 5 You testified earlier that there was no 6 testing done before the fire of the material, right? 7 Α Yes. 8 And my question is: Is that -- and you 9 answered a number of questions with that you didn't know what different values were. Does that mean that 10 you cannot come up with a good engineering opinion as 11 to the origin of the fire? Are you still able to do 12 t.hat.? 13 14 Without knowing all the chemistry side of it and the chemical parts, to have a hundred 15 percent certainty of what caused the fire, you would 16 need to have all that information. 17 18 That wasn't my question. Q 19 Α At what point --20 MR. HUDGINS: Wait a minute. Let 21 him -- I am liking it so far. 2.2 THE WITNESS: No. But that doesn't 23 mean that -- you know, it -- let's start 24 over. I still --

```
1 build up is the heavier particulate. The fine
```

- 2 particulate would continue on into the bag house.
- 3 Eventually --
- 4 Q What -- go ahead.
- 5 A Eventually, if the duct got choked up
- 6 enough and the velocity got high enough, it may start
- 7 picking up the larger stuff and moving it as well.
- 8 Q What does that tell you about the
- 9 likelihood of a fire -- you know, as a factor, the
- 10 likelihood of the explosion being in the bag house as
- 11 opposed to the duct?
- 12 A The likelihood is that the -- again,
- 13 the bag house is a very good classifier of material.
- 14 First, if it fell out into the duct, the heavier part
- 15 didn't even get to the hopper. The next separation
- 16 would be in the hopper with -- heavier particles would
- 17 end up in the hopper. The light dust would end up on
- 18 the filter media as part of the dust cake, which then
- 19 is more explosive. The smaller the particle, the more
- 20 explosive the particle.
- 21 Q The fact that there was no testing done
- 22 of the material before the explosion, and you are not
- 23 able to give some precise values, and you have talked
- 24 about that, does that make it -- does that make it

```
1
     4500 feet per minute. It was not tested, but most
 2
     materials of that size and that particulate will
 3
     convey at 3500 feet per minute. That comes out of the
 4
     ACGIH quide, industrial ventilation quide. So they
 5
     gave you a higher rate to make sure that the ductwork
 6
     stays clean.
 7
                     So -- and what evidence do you have
 8
     that there was not sufficient conveying velocity?
 9
                     There probably was sufficient conveying
10
     velocity when the ductwork filled up to three or four
11
     inches high. Eventually, it will convey. Once you
     have built up enough dust in there to reduce the area,
12
     then it will convey. But you shouldn't have three or
13
     four inches or five inches of dust in the bottom of
14
15
     the -- that's not acceptable.
16
              0
                     What effect does the failure to have
     conveying velocity have on the concentration -- if
17
     any, on the concentration of the more dangerous
18
     smaller particles in the bag house as opposed to
19
     what's happening in the ductwork itself?
20
21
                     Again, in the smaller -- the lighter
22
     the particle, the smaller the particle is conveyed at
23
     a lower velocity than what the heavier parts are. So
```

what would stay in the ductwork first and start to

```
Page 231
 1
     safe for its intended use?
 2
                     No, it was not reasonably safe for its
 3
     intended use.
 4
              Q
                     So you have an opinion, yes, but the
 5
     opinion is no, that it is not?
 6
                     Yes, I have an opinion, and the opinion
 7
     is --
 8
                     MR. HUDGINS: Objection, leading.
 9
                     MR. ALEXANDER: Yes. Let him testify,
10
              not you.
                     THE WITNESS: Yes. And it's
11
12
              available -- the information is available.
13
              And having the information and doing that is
              that the unit should have either been
14
              provided with additional vents or different
15
16
              types of vents, something that was going to
17
              make it handle the case of the 415 Kst.
18
     BY MR. BROWN:
19
20
                     Did the system that was put in the
              Q
     Federal-Mogul plant have sufficient conveying
21
     velocity?
22
23
                     No. And that is given is that the
24
     conveying velocity of -- that's required by NFPA is
```

Page 230 1 That would be -- that would be the 2 place I would go to in making that determination. 3 Q Well, we are not so concerned about 4 what we would do. What about a reasonably prudent 5 engineer? 6 Reasonably prudent engineer would use 7 that information. 8 To come up -- all right. 9 Α I would base it on something that's a 10 standard, not something pulled out of the air. All right. And, again, we are not 11 Q asking you what you would do so much as we are asking 12 what a reasonable and prudent manufacturer would do. 13 14 Α Okay. 15 Would a reasonably prudent manufacturer then look to NFPA 68 with this information, that is, 16 the information in Exhibit Number 17, to be able to 17 design a reasonably safe dust bag house for this --18 for this application? And the answer is? 19 20 Α Yes. 21 All right. And so do you have an 22 opinion to a reasonable degree of engineering 23 probability as to whether or not the Dustex bag house, 24 as sold and delivered to Federal-Mogul, was reasonably

```
Page 229
 1
     bag house for this application?
 2
                     Yes. That was included in my report.
 3
              Q
                     And what was the result of that?
 4
              Α
                     The resulting pressures were -- or
 5
     resulting size was roughly half of the required
 6
     amount. I can go back through the --
 7
              Q
                     Okay. And that's been made an exhibit?
 8
              Α
                     Yeah.
 9
                     So you are looking at the calculations
10
     that you did. So when you were talking about not
11
     having the Kst or the values for the particular
     aluminum dust on -- you know, before -- you know,
12
     before the manufacturer, did that prevent you from
13
     coming up with a reliable opinion onto whether or not
14
15
     those --
16
              Α
                    No.
                     Why not?
17
                     Because I based it on information that
18
19
     was provided by NFPA in their standard for explosion
     protection and utilized those numbers in doing the
20
     calculations.
21
22
                     And if that information was indeed not
23
     available to Dustex, is that where Dustex would go --
24
     could have gone in order to get the information?
```

Page 228 1 Α No. 2 Q Okay. Is there a way that a 3 manufacturer -- in the absence of the material actual 4 testing, because the unit hasn't been built yet, is 5 there a way that's provided under NFPA 68 to make a 6 determination of how to safely design the unit? 7 Α In NFPA 68 they have representative dust Kst's and Pmax's for different materials. 8 9 Aluminum dust was one of those. 10 And what was the Kst? 0 11 Α Kst was 415. All right. And with that information 12 Q 13 that they had then, was Dustex in a position to manufacture a bag house then with the information that 14 would be reasonably safe by taking into account the 15 Kst value that's contained in the NFPA 68? 16 17 Α Yes. 18 Q Okay. They would have an obligation to make 19 Α sure that the design of their explosion vents met the 20 21 requirements of the dust that they were producing. 22 All right. And have you made 0 23 calculations using the NFPA 68 to determine the 24 venting that should have been used for this particular

Page 227 1 in this case was two to three grains per standard 2 cubic foot. 3 The second sentence says -- first under 4 A, it says, System conditions as we understand those. 5 That's what the understanding of what they are 6 designing it against. B is Proposed Dustex Equipment For This Application. It goes down to quantity of it, 7 8 the model of it, the type of bags, the length of the 9 bags, the bag material --10 For time, let me interrupt. 0 11 Α All of the design. 12 If somebody wants to object to my Q interrupting, I will stop interrupting, but I want to 13 try and get through here. What was the material that 14 15 Dustex was advised by that document was going to be removed? What kind of dust was it? 16 17 Filtration contaminated dust from aluminum sanding operations. 18 19 All right. And does that information 0 20 contain -- give us any testing of the particular 21 material that was going to be removed? 22 Α No. 23 And, indeed, it had not been built at Q 24 that point, right?

```
Page 226
 1
              unless he has personal knowledge.
 2
                     MR. BROWN: He can --
 3
 4
     BY MR. BROWN:
 5
                     What information did this document,
 6
     that is, Number 17, give to Dustex that relates to the
 7
     design requirements for the bag house if they were
 8
     going to sell? You got that?
 9
              Α
                     Yeah.
10
                     Give me an answer.
              0
11
              Α
                     Yeah, I will answer it.
                                               In the
     industry of dust collection, the -- because this is
12
     specialized equipment -- and this held true if it was
13
     at Pneumafil or Donaldson or Dustex or Flex-Kleen.
14
     There is information that you provide them so that
15
16
     they can select the equipment, the appropriate
     equipment, to do it.
17
18
                     And the they is who?
              Q
                     The manufacturer.
19
              Α
20
              Q
                     In this case, Dustex?
21
              Α
                     In this case, Dustex. And some of the
22
     information that you provide, you know, includes the
23
     type of dust that it's going to be, your airflow of
24
     it, what your inlet pressure is. Your inlet loading
```

```
Page 225
     pressures. Somebody had to engineer the system.
 1
 2
              Q
                     And based on your experience, what --
 3
     and what -- then based on this document, what was your
 4
     understanding -- that is Number 17 -- of what Dustex
 5
     knew about the type of material that was being --
                     MR. ALEXANDER: Object to the form of
 6
 7
              that question.
 8
                     MR. BROWN: I understand.
 9
10
     BY MR. BROWN:
11
                     What was your understanding of what
     they would know?
12
13
                     MR. HUDGINS: Objection. You are
14
              asking him to speculate as to what somebody
15
              else --
16
17
     BY MR. BROWN:
                     What information did they have that was
18
     relevant to the design requirements of a person who is
19
     going to be selling a bag house for industrial dust?
20
21
                     MR. HUDGINS: The document speaks for
2.2
              it itself.
23
                     MR. ALEXANDER: Same objection about
24
              what they had. He can't know what they had
```

```
Page 224
 1
     industry and the trade?
 2
              Α
                      I am familiar, yeah.
 3
              Q
                     Okay. Go ahead. So what does 17 tell
 4
     11s?
 5
              Α
                      17 tells us the size of the equipment,
 6
     what the model numbers were, hopper sizes,
     air-to-cloth ratios, which would be -- an air-to-cloth
 8
     ratio is important in determining if the application
     of the filter -- different materials or different
 9
10
     dusts require different air-to-cloth ratios.
11
                      Is any of that information,
              Q
     air-to-cloth ratio and all that information, is that
12
     included in the specification --
13
14
              Α
                     No.
                     -- document?
15
              Q
16
                     MR. HUDGINS: Objection to the extent
17
              those documents speak for themselves.
18
     BY MR. BROWN:
19
                     So where does that information come
20
              0
21
     from then?
22
                     Whoever designed the system and
23
     selected the equipment came up with those model
24
     numbers, equipment sizes, fan, horsepower, static
```

Page 223 1 system, including estimated airflow requirements, 2 static pressure, et cetera, should be provided with 3 the proposal. Two copies of operating procedures, 4 troubleshooting guides, and spare parts should be 5 included with the equipment. 6 0 And that was what was sent to --7 This is what was sent. Α 8 And who was it sent to, Carrington? 9 Α It was sent to Carrington. 10 Q Okay. 11 Α So it gave them the general requirements, but the actual design requirements and 12 selection of equipment requirements rested with 13 Carrington. Whether they passed that on to Dustex or 14 15 anybody else, that would really be up to Carrington. 16 0 So let's take a look at that. will take a look at Exhibit Number 17. Does that give 17 us information about what information was passed 18 along? 19 20 MR. HUDGINS: Objection to the extent 21 that the document speaks for itself. 22 23 BY MR. BROWN: 24 Q All right. You are familiar with the

```
Page 222
 1
                      (Deposition Exhibit Schloss 19 was
 2
              marked and entered into the Record.)
 3
 4
     BY MR. BROWN:
 5
                     Okay. I am going to show you Garard --
     what's now marked as Deposition Exhibit 19. Tell us
 6
 7
     what that is.
 8
              Α
                     That was the collection system
     equipment specifications provided by Federal-Mogul to
 9
10
     Carrington Engineering.
11
                     All right. And what do we mean by --
              Q
     what is meant by the term "performance specification"?
12
13
                     Performance specification is here are
14
     the requirements of the system to perform to.
15
     actual design selection and -- of all the equipment is
     up to the bidder. And he had asked for both
16
     individual costing on each one of the pieces of
17
     equipment as well as the sizes, the -- some of the
18
     things that they are looking for with the proposal,
19
20
     general arrangement drawings showing overall
     dimensions, location of operator controls, location of
21
22
     required utilities provided with each collection
     system with the proposal.
23
24
                     Complete description of each collection
```

```
Page 221
 1
              sequence from the three plaintiffs, or did I
 2
              miss a meeting? I guess it's -- where are
 3
              the first 16? You are marking that 17. What
 4
              was 1 through 15?
 5
                     THE WITNESS: Oh, a lot of those were
 6
              pictures.
7
                     MR. HUDGINS: Oh, okay. These were
8
              just his premarked numbers that we are using.
                     MR. BROWN: No, these are the court
 9
10
              reporter's markings.
11
                     MR. HUDGINS: Have we talked about 17
12
             exhibits today?
13
                     MR. JOHNSON: Yeah, we had all these
14
             photo --
15
                     MR. HUDGINS: Oh, that's right, all of
16
             these photographs. I'm sorry.
17
18
     BY MR. BROWN:
19
                    All right. I'm going to show you --
              Q
20
                     MR. BROWN: 18, madam court reporter?
                     THE WITNESS: That was also someone
21
              else's exhibit.
22
23
                     MR. BROWN: 19. It was also Garard
24
              Exhibit Number 3 on the deposition.
```

```
Page 220
 1
                     MR. BROWN:
                                We will see where we are at
 2
              the end of 15 minutes, and we will see if we
 3
              are -- could stand on that.
 4
 5
     BY MR. BROWN:
 6
                     Did any of the questions that were
 7
     asked by the defense counsel up until now change any
 8
     of the opinions contained in Deposition Exhibit 18?
 9
                     No. I still stand by all those.
10
                     All right. Now, do you have the
              0
11
     proposal that was made by Mr. Garard to -- and
     forwarded to Carrington Industries with you?
12
13
                     I have the specifications.
14
                     The specifications. Let's call them
              0
15
     what they are, the specifications. Would you pull
16
     that out, please, and may we mark that.
                     I also have Dustex's order
17
     acknowledgement.
18
19
                     I am going to ask you about that, but
20
     let's start with the -- with the specifications.
21
                     MR. HUDGINS: What did we mark that
22
              Dustex proposal?
23
                     MR. BROWN: That was Number 17.
24
                     MR. HUDGINS: Is this running in
```

,	Page 219
1	the form?
2	THE WITNESS: Everything that was
3	written in the proposal is based on my
4	professional opinion of the facts and is the
5	analysis that I went through in making my
6	determinations.
7	
8	BY MR. BROWN:
9	Q When you say proposal, you mean the
10	A I'm sorry, report.
11	Q The report, okay.
12	MR. BROWN: Is there still an
13	objection? Because I want to be able to meet
14	the objection.
15	MR. MORRIS: The objection to the form
16	is that it's improper to as to a general
17	overall statement for all of the opinions.
18	MR. BROWN: Okay. Then we might be
19	here a little while. Okay.
20	MR. HARBERT: Then I move we come back
21	tomorrow morning, guys. I told you I have
22	got family commitments in about 15 minutes.
23	If you want to go through each one of those
24	opinions one at a time

```
Page 218
                     Now, does that report contain your
 1
              Q
 2
     opinions and the basis of your opinions regarding this
 3
     case?
              Α
                     Yes.
 5
                     And are all those opinions to a
 6
     reasonable degree of engineering probability or
 7
     certainty?
 8
              Α
                     Yes.
                     MR. MORRIS: Note my objection to the
 9
10
              form.
11
                     MR. HUDGINS: Object to the form.
12
13
     BY MR. BROWN:
14
                     Were all of those opinions to a
     reasonable degree of engineering probability?
15
16
                     MR. MORRIS: Objection.
17
                     MR. HUDGINS: Same objection.
18
19
     BY MR. BROWN:
20
                     Okay. You can go ahead and answer.
              Q
21
              Α
                     Both.
                     MR. BROWN: And if it's a form
2.2
23
              question, can you tell me what your problem
24
              with the form is? What's the problem with
```

```
Page 217
 1
                            EXAMINATION
 2
 3
     BY MR. BROWN:
 4
                     I have in my hand Deposition Exhibit
 5
     Number 17, Dustex, contains the language, Enclosed is
 6
     our quotation for equipment we feel best -- will best
     suit your needs based on the application data outlined
 8
     to us. Is that what you had just been talking about
 9
     earlier in answer to Dustex counsel's questions --
10
              Α
                     Yes.
                     -- for identification?
11
12
              Α
                     Yes.
13
                     We are going to come back to that.
              Q
14
                     MR. BROWN: May I have another sticker
15
             please, madam court reporter.
16
17
                      (Deposition Exhibit Schloss 18 was
18
              marked and entered into the Record.)
19
     BY MR. BROWN:
20
                     I am going to show you Deposition
21
22
     Exhibit Number 18. Can you tell us what that is?
23
              Α
                     That's a report that I prepared for
24
     yourself and for the court.
```

```
Page 216
 1
     Federal-Mogul and my client, Dustex, or, you know,
 2
     through the Carrington agency?
 3
              Α
                     There is a couple e-mails between them.
 4
     One was talking about the limited liability on the
 5
     terms and conditions side of it. I see on the
     reference here is the reference to Dustex on a
 6
     proposal was a telephone conversation, so they must
 8
     have discussed what the application was in between it
 9
     on the phone, but I didn't see a phone record of what
10
     was discussed at that point.
11
                     Besides the e-mails and that document,
              Q
     that's the only information exchange that you are
12
     aware of?
13
14
                     No, I mean, unless -- unless it's in
15
     the information that I reviewed in that list, no.
16
     would just say what's on that list is what I reviewed.
17
                     MR. HUDGINS: All right. Thank you.
18
              You have the floor, sir.
19
                     MR. BROWN: All right. Let me have --
              for the Record, let's mark this as an
20
21
              exhibit.
2.2
23
                     (Deposition Exhibit Schloss 17 was
24
              marked and entered into the Record.)
```

Page 215 1 BY MR. HUDGINS: 2 Q The piece of paper that you are holding 3 does not have any Bates numbers on it, but it's the 4 Federal -- excuse me, the Dustex proposal to 5 Federal-Mogul. What's the date of that? 3/19/02. 6 Α 7 And that's what you were referring to 8 earlier in your testimony? 9 Yeah, the whole proposal, but that one 10 part of it says that, you know, enclosed are --11 enclosed is our quotation for the equipment we feel best suits your needs based on the application data. 12 And below that, the application filtration of 13 contaminated dust from aluminum sanding operation, 14 type of dust aluminum/metallic, 4000 CFM. It gives 15 16 inlet loadings. And there was also proposals for antistatic bags on the filter bags to make sure that 17 you didn't have sparking in the dust collector. 18 have Brixon latches, explosion relief vents. All that 19 20 is detailed in their proposal. That document obviously speaks for 21 22 itself. Besides the information that is referenced in 23 that document, are you aware of any other 24 communications or information exchange between

```
Page 214
     proposal out.
 1
 2
                     MR. BROWN: Why don't we real quick
 3
              make a couple copies of that.
 4
                     THE WITNESS: Let me just do -- it
 5
              says, Enclosed is our quotation for equipment
 6
              we feel will best suit your needs based on
 7
              the application data outlined to us.
              in the first paragraph right below the
 8
 9
              header.
10
11
     BY MR. HUDGINS:
                     And that's what you were referring to
12
              Q
     in your testimony earlier?
13
14
                     Yeah, the two -- that Dustex reviewed
              Α
     the information and provided equipment that was the
15
16
     best -- suit their needs.
17
                     All right. And that's --
              0
18
                      I took that at face value.
              Α
19
                     That's as specific as it got?
              Q
20
                     THE VIDEOGRAPHER:
                                         Counsel, we had gone
21
              off, and now we are back on.
                                             I'm sorry.
22
              last question and answer, if you could
23
              repeat, please.
24
```

```
Page 213
 1
              witness say that there was a piece of paper
 2
              that my client stated that the bag house that
 3
              was sold to Federal-Mogul was the equipment
 4
              that was specific to their request. I
 5
              don't --
                      MR. BROWN: I was going to ask him
 6
 7
              about that.
 8
 9
                            EXAMINATION
10
11
     BY MR. HUDGINS:
                      I'd like to just -- what piece of paper
12
              Q
13
     are we --
14
                      It's on the proposal itself.
              Α
15
                      Can you find that in your materials so
              Q
16
     that I will know what your testimony is based upon?
17
                      MR. BROWN:
                                 Pull that out, and we will
18
              make that an exhibit. I was going to ask you
19
              about that.
20
21
     BY MR. HUDGINS:
22
                      Is there a Bates number on that that
23
     you can direct me to?
24
              Α
                      No, but let me -- let me pull the
```

```
Page 212
 1
                     The duct, all right. So that situation
              0
 2
     is always going to exist when the machinery is not
 3
     operating?
                          It has to be cold outside.
 5
                     Okay. That situation is always going
 6
     to exist in the cold weather months when the machinery
 7
     is not operating?
 8
              Α
                     That risk is going to be there during
     that time.
 9
10
                     You --
11
              Α
                     Whether it turns into a hazard, I don't
     know, but the risk is there.
12
                     You have provided in your report a list
13
     of cases in which you have testified in the past four
14
15
     or five years. What I'd like to know is: Has your
16
     expert opinion as to the origin and cause of a fire
     ever been accepted by any court?
17
                     I have never been to court. I have
18
19
     been deposed, but never to court.
20
                     MR. HARBERT: That's all the questions
              I have.
21
2.2
                     MR. HUDGINS: I need to ask one real
23
              quick question because it came as a complete
24
              shock and surprise to me when I heard the
```

- 1 vent that and would reduce the exothermic. But,
- 2 again, exothermic could be in the bottom of a pile
- 3 that isn't -- you know, that's covered up. So it
- 4 doesn't prevent it.
- 5 O But the risk of an exothermic reaction
- 6 goes up when you turn the equipment off?
- 7 A Yeah, because you are not -- you have
- 8 no chance of dissipating the heat away from it at that
- 9 point.
- 10 Q Until the heat inside the bag house is
- 11 reduced to be the equivalent of the heat outside the
- 12 bag house and the condensation process stops?
- 13 A Condensation process is going to keep
- 14 going as long as you have vapor coming from the plant
- 15 going out into that bag house.
- Okay. But if the air --
- 17 A Air can travel one way. Vapor can
- 18 travel against the airflow. So even if you had
- 19 airflow the other way, water vapor can travel based on
- 20 vapor pressure, not on humidity. But it would have
- 21 kept -- it would have kept on building up if it had a
- 22 source of access to the inside air.
- 23 Q The source of access being?
- 24 A The ductwork.

```
Page 210
 1
                     I couldn't find it anyplace.
              0
 2
              Α
                     No, because it wasn't -- I didn't get
 3
     into what actually caused the, you know, humidity in
 4
     it.
 5
                     Is it your opinion that it was improper
              Q
 6
     for Federal-Mogul to have both wet filtering and dry
     filtering apparatuses?
7
                     No. Each of them have their own
 8
 9
     application.
                   In the sanding side of it, which has the
10
     wet, you are going to end up with more hot embers
11
     going into it, very small particulate, very explosive,
     and a wet collector is the right selection. I didn't
12
     have any problem with the specifications as they
13
14
     were -- as put forward.
15
                     As I understand your theory as to the
16
     cause of this fire, the warm air from inside the plant
     is drawn into the bag house by the operation of the
17
     bag house, correct?
18
19
              Α
                     Yeah.
20
                     And, normally, the operation of the bag
              Q
     house provides sufficient ventilation to prevent the
21
22
     exothermic reaction?
23
              Α
                     It would prevent the buildup of -- it
24
     would -- buildup of any hydrogen in there. It would
```

```
Page 209
 1
              Q
                     So --
 2
              Α
                     You could speculate it.
 3
              Q
                     Right. But it would have to be
 4
     speculative to do that?
 5
                     And I saw in some of the other
 6
     testimonies or some of the experts speculated to what
 7
     it would be.
 8
                     MR. ALEXANDER: I have no further
              questions. Thank you.
 9
10
11
                           EXAMINATION
12
13
     BY MR. HARBERT:
14
                     Just very briefly, Mr. Schloss. My
15
     name is Guy Harbert. I represent Federal-Mogul.
16
     apologize for my voice. It's actually better than it
     was last week. I just have a very few questions for
17
18
     you.
                     Uh-huh.
19
              Α
20
                     The water vapor-producing machinery
              Q
     that you alluded to earlier today, is that referenced
21
22
     in your report?
                     No. I think in the report I just said
23
     water -- condensation.
24
```

Page 208 1 Other than I saw this is what Dustex 2 recommends as the correct solution for what their 3 problem is. It was part of their proposal was a 4 statement in there saying that was the right -- you 5 know, this is the right equipment for your 6 application. 7 Q So proposal --So I'm assuming -- I am assuming --8 Α 9 0 Proposal and Garard's testimony? 10 Α Yeah. MR. BROWN: That's been asked --11 12 THE WITNESS: And specifications. I 13 mean, there is -- I guess I don't understand 14 the breadth of the question. 15 BY MR. ALEXANDER: 16 Did you make any attempt to quantify 17 the duration of time or the amount of heat that would 18 be required under the weather conditions that morning 19 to precipitate an explosive reaction? 20 21 Α No. 22 Minimum energy ignition --Q Without the chemical composition of the 23 Α 24 dust, you can't calculate it.

```
1
     that type of dust, that airflow, and that application.
 2
     You might end up with a bag house for aluminum dust
 3
     that is half the size of something that's for chicken
 4
     feathers. So, again, it's based on -- their selection
 5
     is based on the application of the dust that's there.
 6
                     Is there any other information other
 7
     than Dave Garard's testimony and the information that
 8
     went from -- from Federal-Mogul through Carrington to
     Dustex, which is the basis of your conclusion that
 9
10
     there was collaborative design?
11
                     Off the top of my head, I can't
     remember. I mean, it's late in the day. There might
12
     be something else that's in there, and I can look
13
     through the books and see. But that's what comes as
14
15
     the major part of my decision was is based on the
16
     testimony and the deposition of David Garard and my --
     and my experience in the dust collection industry as a
17
     manufacturer, as an engineer, and actually purchasing.
18
19
                     But you -- without regard to your own
              Q
20
     prior experience, you do not know what occurred on
     this particular design or transaction other than those
21
22
     two pieces of information we have --
                     Other than I saw --
23
              Α
24
                     -- presently identified?
```

Schloss (Alexander)

```
1
     that they collaborated with Federal-Mogul and others?
 2
                     Because in the information that was
 3
     provided, David Garard's testimony said it was a
 4
     collaborative effort between the group.
 5
                     And that's the sole basis of your
     conclusion?
 6
 7
              Α
                     He gave them the specifications -- he
8
     gave them performance specifications that said here is
 9
     what it needs to perform. Someone at that point had
10
     to decide the ductwork layouts, the -- the selection
     of the dust collector, selection of the backdraft
11
    backblast damper. Would have had to do the system
12
     design at that point. I didn't see design drawings
13
     were provided with the specifications.
14
15
                     Were you provided with any information
16
     that would have enabled you to identify which
     individual or entity did those specific tasks?
17
                     In the information that I have, it
18
     shows that the information was conveyed from
19
20
     Federal-Mogul to Carrington to Dustex. So Dustex
     would have been -- Dustex and Carrington would have
21
22
    been involved in the selection of that equipment.
23
                     Again, too, the selection of equipment
24
     is based on the manufacturer's recommendations for
```

Schloss (Alexander)

```
Page 205
 1
     NFPA requires that you discharge them to the outside
 2
     and not return them to the building.
 3
              Q
                     That's not what I just asked you, was
     it?
 5
              Α
                     I thought it was.
 6
                     I asked you about whether the fan would
 7
     have been damaged.
 8
                     MR. BROWN: I think he answered the
 9
              question.
10
     BY MR. ALEXANDER:
11
12
              0
                     Which failed -- which burst first, the
     bag house or the backdraft damper?
13
14
                     I would say they burst within
     milliseconds of one another. Which one went first?
15
16
     Again, you are talking about a duration that's less
     than a tenth of a second. So what came first, the
17
     chicken or the egg? Typically, the dust collector
18
     goes first and the backdraft damper would go second,
19
     because if you are going to have the explosion inside
20
     the dust collector, it's going to see the rapid rise
21
22
     of pressure first.
                     What design activities by Carrington do
23
              Q
24
     you include as the basis of your prior testimony today
```

```
Page 204
     system?
 1
 2
              Α
                     No.
                          Draft is. Backdraft damper --
 3
              Q
                     But your --
 4
              Α
                     -- comes back as a backdraft.
 5
              0
                     Your testimony is that blast is not
     used to refer to the direction of air movement?
 6
 7
                     Not in my professional opinion, no.
              Α
 8
                     Did you -- you testified that the
 9
     fan -- that the blast would have gone through the fan?
10
              Α
                     Yes.
11
                     And the fan would have been damaged as
              Q
     a result of that?
12
13
              A
                     No.
14
                     Why not?
              Q
15
              Α
                     The fan is built out of heavy material
16
     handling equipment gauges. It could have been damaged
     in the -- in the thing, but -- in the explosion, but
17
     it wouldn't necessarily have to be. And, again, that
18
     was a -- the explosion going through the fan was just
19
20
     going to relieve that explosion to the outside.
     that duct was tied back into the inside of the plant,
21
22
     then it would require an isolation device be put
     between the fan and the building to return that air
23
     back into the building. On aluminum dust collectors,
24
```

- 1 that was part of a explosion protection device, that
- 2 it was installed as an explosion protection device,
- 3 and that factory -- I mean, Federal-Mogul, David
- 4 Garard, said he bought it as a isolation device, that
- that's what his assumption of what that device was 5
- 6 for.
- 7 Q Let me ask the question again. Does
- 8 blast on that name, is that a synonym for explosion?
- 9 Those dampers that are doing it, they
- 10 are called backblast dampers, backblast preventers.
- 11 There is numerous names for it.
- Is it your testimony that the term 12 Q
- "blast" used with this product is not the historic 13
- term "blast" meaning air movement as in the air 14
- 15 movement industry? Is that your testimony?
- 16 Α Yeah, because blast and the air moving,
- you are talking about air coming -- rotation of a fan 17
- doesn't equal explosion protection. In the explosion 18
- protection business, blast means a explosion. If you 19
- 20 are putting a device in as an explosion protection
- thing, blast means the blast from an explosion. 21
- 22 Is it not so that the term "blast" is
- 23 commonly used in the air moving, air design industry
- 24 to refer to the direction which air moves within that

```
Page 202
                     -- to explain how it ended up where it
 1
              Q
 2
     did?
 3
              Α
                     No.
                          Just that the -- that the
 4
     explosive forces were greater than the P-ultimate of
 5
     the bag house due to the observations of the failure.
 6
                     Did you make any attempt to calculate
 7
     the duration of the explosion from the point of
     ignition --
 8
 9
              Α
                     No.
10
                     -- to the point where the pressure --
              0
                     No.
11
              Α
12
                     Let me finish. -- from the point of
              Q
     ignition, the point in time of ignition, to the point
13
     in time when the pressure had returned to basically
14
15
     atmospheric.
16
                     No.
                          Without knowing the dust
     characteristics of how fast that would go, how fast it
17
     would take to explode, you can't calculate it.
18
19
                     Looking at the Exhibit 15 and 16 that
              Q
20
     refer to a backblast damper, is it your testimony that
     the term "blast" in -- as was used for the description
21
22
     of that K&B device refers to as a synonym of an
     explosion?
23
24
              Α
                     I would say that if it says blast, that
```

```
Page 201
 1
                     -- like that may have occurred -- I
              0
 2
     need to be able to finish my question.
 3
              Α
                     Okay.
 4
              Q
                     On the possibility that there may have
 5
     been some event that caused a dispersion, right?
 6
                     Start over.
 7
                     Your -- you have drawn the conclusion
 8
     that you have had based upon the assumption that there
 9
     was a dispersal event, dispersion event, in the bag
10
     house, but we have no evidence that such an event, in
11
     fact, occurred?
                     There is no evidence that it didn't
12
              Α
             I mean, it's -- it's based on the -- all the
13
     perfect storm coming together at the same point.
14
15
     you are doing the same thing internally in that
     ductwork in the plant. You are assuming that you have
16
     a MEC level, minimum explosive concentration level, at
17
     the same time you have enough energy to set the
18
     aluminum dust off that you don't have any idea how
19
20
     much energy that takes. So if you add all those
21
     together, you are in the same boat.
22
                     Did you attempt to quantify the forces
     of the explosion in the bag house --
23
24
              Α
                     No.
```

```
1
     how they were doing it, were they taking it and
 2
     jamming it in two feet and stirring it around?
 3
     didn't see any information like that. So to know that
 4
     it created -- if you were vacuuming it passively and
 5
     getting it close to it and allowing it to suck it up,
 6
     there would be no dispersion. If you are in there
7
     twirling something around trying to get it to break
8
    up, then you are going to have more dispersion with
 9
     it.
10
                     But, again, without knowing what the
11
    minimum explosive concentration -- and, again, these
     explosive concentrations are pretty thick. Explosive
12
     concentration on coal dust, you can't see a 25-watt
13
     light bulb through a six-foot coal dust thing.
14
15
     it's not like a little puff of powder when you empty a
16
             It's -- you can't see through it.
17
                     Okay. And we have no information or
     evidence at all whether there was any dispersion of
18
     dust at all within the bag house at this time, do we?
19
20
              Α
                     There are ways you can have dispersion
     in the bag house when it's sitting inoperable, and
21
22
     that's what I base my opinions on.
23
                     On the possibility that some event --
              Q
```

Because -- because they are --

24

Α

```
Page 199
 1
              Α
                     No.
 2
              Q
                     Okay.
 3
              Α
                     In a design that -- in the case of
 4
     this, if there is no Kst value that's been determined,
 5
     many times they will have a similar process that has a
 6
     Kst value. And, you know, after -- really, at that
 7
     point then, you are going to available data, but you
 8
     are going to look for the worst possible case in the
     available data. You don't want to be too small in the
 9
10
     explosion protection. And then once it's run, then we
11
     have the manufacturer, the customer, go do the test to
     validate our conclusions, or validate our assumptions.
12
                     But with respect to the dust in this
13
14
     individual case, all of that would be speculative,
15
     correct?
16
              Α
                     Without having that test, no, I mean,
17
     there is no way of knowing now.
18
                     With respect to the dispersal of the
     dust, which is required for an explosion, what degree
19
     of dispersal occurs, in your opinion, with the
20
     vacuuming in the duct?
21
22
                     It would be hard to speculate that.
     Again, on the -- you are actually sucking in and
23
24
     having it under a negative pressure. The method of
```

```
Page 198
 1
                     Right. You can't really correlate this
              0
 2
     dust to what --
 3
              Α
                     No.
 4
                      -- was the aluminum dust in this plant
 5
     without actually testing it?
                     Yeah. What that showed was the
 6
              Α
 7
     characteristic of the dust, that it wasn't aluminum
 8
     turnings, it wasn't large particulate, that it was a
 9
     fine particulate that was coming off with the brushing
10
     operations.
11
              Q
                     So you --
12
                      It was more just for an informational
              Α
     thing to look at, what did a similar process -- but,
13
14
     again, on steel, which is going to have different
     requirements than aluminum is going to have. But what
15
16
     did the process produce.
17
                     But without testing the --
18
                     Without testing it --
              Α
                     -- aluminum --
19
              0
20
              Α
                     No.
21
                      -- you can't really have any basis upon
              Q
22
     which you would base --
23
              Α
                     No.
24
                      -- a design, right?
              Q
```

Page 197 1 Have you made any effort to determine 0 2 whether you have ever designed a system that contained 3 the same alloy and particle size as involved in this 4 case? 5 No. And, again, that's because I don't 6 know what the particle size of what exploded was and what the chemical characteristics are. 7 8 When I look at this Deposition Exhibit 9 2 that we have identified here, I see some what looks 10 like dirt on your end of your finger. It's my 11 understanding that this was steel dust, right? That was steel dust. It was oxidation 12 Α off the steel. 13 14 And this was a different material than the aluminum --15 That's different material than 16 aluminum. And we asked the operator was the aluminum 17 similar to that in construction -- or in dust, and his 18 19 response was yes. 20 And if that --0 I didn't document that because 21 22 that's -- in his opinion -- that's his opinion. Whether that's truly what it was, without scientific 23 24 testing on it, it's not really going to help much.

```
Page 196
 1
              Α
                     Exothermic.
 2
                     Exothermic what?
              Q
 3
              Α
                     Exothermic reaction with water and
 4
     humidity getting into it. They were also handling
 5
     other materials other than just aluminum.
 6
                     So the exothermic reaction that you are
 7
     talking about was not exclusively aluminum dust?
                     Could have been titanium. It could
 8
              Α
 9
     have been steel. You know, that was different things
10
     that they processed. They had a hundred percent --
11
     pretty sure they had a hundred percent aluminum
     product, but I don't know if that product was running
12
     when the dust collector burnt down.
13
14
                     Were you asked to evaluate the cause of
     the explosions and fires in that situation?
15
16
                          I was asked to design a new system
17
     that wouldn't catch on fire and wouldn't explode.
18
                     Have you -- how many exclusively
     aluminum dust collection systems have you designed in
19
     your career?
20
21
                     Again, a lot of times it's aluminum,
22
     aluminum alloys. It wouldn't -- you know, without
     going back and looking at what each dust was, I don't
23
24
     know. I mean, it's --
```

```
Page 195
 1
                     And what do they manufacture, and where
              0
 2
     are they?
 3
              Α
                     They are in Spartanburg, South
 4
     Carolina, and they -- they manufacture a wire -- a
 5
     bowl formed steel conduit filled with different types
     of dust for the steel industry to fine-tune the final
 6
     batch on a arc furnace.
 7
 8
                     And what kind of aluminum dust do they
 9
     use?
10
                     They actually have -- it's not the size
     of a BB, but it's bigger than what the dust is on
11
     that -- on my finger there. It's actually a dust --
12
     it's actually more like a pellet, but a small -- small
13
14
         Probably a fifth the diameter of a BB.
15
                     And do you know what the minimum
16
     ignition energy for that is?
17
                     I have it in a -- in some testing, but
     not off the top of my head, no.
18
                     And they had had an -- several
19
              Q
     explosions before, I understand?
20
21
                     They had fires, four fires, and two of
22
     them resulted in explosions.
23
                     And what was determined to be the cause
              Q
24
     of the explosions?
```

```
Page 194
 1
     opposed to sucking up --
 2
              Α
                      They have different -- they have
 3
     different properties of actually releasing those
 4
     charges or conducting them away.
 5
                     And you don't know whether or not the
 6
     hose they were using was grounded or not?
 7
              Α
                     No.
 8
                     MR. HUDGINS: That's all the questions
 9
              I have got.
10
11
                           EXAMINATION
12
13
     BY MR. ALEXANDER:
14
                     I am Bevin Alexander --
15
                     MR. HUDGINS: And thank you, by the
16
              way, for your cooperation.
17
18
     BY MR. ALEXANDER:
19
                      I am Bevin Alexander, and I have got a
           You indicated to me that the design that you
20
     performed for the company that had had multiple
21
22
     explosions that we have heard about several times
23
     today was -- the company's name was Odermath?
24
              Α
                      Odermath, O-D-E-R-M-A-T-H.
```

```
Page 193
 1
     ignition energy of the aluminum dust would be, no.
 2
                     Well, for instance, does aluminum dust
 3
     carry a positive or a negative charge?
 4
                     It will conduct electricity.
 5
                     All right. And PVC, do you know
 6
     whether that's a positive or a negative charge
 7
     substance?
 8
              Α
                     No, it won't conduct electricity.
 9
     usually plus on the inside, minus on the outside.
10
                     Did you do any studies of the
     interaction between specifically aluminum dust and
11
12
     PVC?
13
              Α
                     No.
14
                     So you don't know whether that
15
     combination was more or less likely to create sparks?
16
              Α
                     Without knowing what the ignition
     energies of the dust, you could calculate it all day
17
     long and it's not going to mean anything.
18
19
                     So that's just not part of your
              Q
     opinion, that aluminum dust and PVC might have had a
20
21
     different --
22
                     No. Aluminum dust --
              Α
23
                     -- capacity -- let me finish.
              Q
24
     different capacity for creating electric charges as
```

```
Page 192
 1
     should narrow it considerably.
 2
              Α
                     Well, I can give you a list of hundreds
 3
     of bag houses.
 4
              Q
                     All right.
 5
                     If we -- if we show up at trial, I will
     have the list for you.
 6
 7
                     Did it factor into your opinion at all
 8
     that the three plaintiffs in this case testified about
 9
     the vacuum apparatus they were using was biting them
10
     through their heavy leather gloves?
11
              Α
                     Anytime that you are going to use a
     vacuum, even in a small vacuum in your house, you
12
     could end up having static electricity onto it.
13
     Whether -- it doesn't have to be combustible dust to
14
15
     have -- to be generating a static. It's anytime that
16
     you are going to have material flowing through it.
17
                     Did you consider the electrostatic
     qualities of aluminum versus PVC in developing your
18
     opinion in this case? And that might not be the
19
     proper --
20
21
                     That's not --
              Α
22
                     -- term, but the -- the molecular
              0
23
     qualities in terms of charges of aluminum versus PVC.
24
              Α
                     Without knowing what the minimum
```

```
Page 191
 1
                     I would be real interested in seeing
              0
 2
     projects specifically related to aluminum dust that
 3
     you worked on either as a private engineer, consulting
 4
     engineer, or --
 5
                     That would take me a while to put
 6
     together without going back through, especially after
 7
     selling my business.
 8
                     MR. BROWN: And if he is going to do
              that, you need to be prepared to pay him for
 9
10
              the time of doing that.
11
                     MR. HUDGINS: Well, no. That's all
12
              part of my asking him questions here.
                                                      If he
13
              is going to show up at trial, I am going to
14
              ask him again because he has got a statement
15
              here that he is responsible for hundreds of
16
              bag houses. So if you don't want to give me
17
              anything, that's fine, but you might be asked
18
              that question again.
                     THE WITNESS: I can give you a list of
19
20
              hundreds of bag houses that I manufactured.
21
22
     BY MR. HUDGINS:
23
                     I am making it easy. I am saying
              Q
24
     specifically just related to aluminum dust, and that
```

```
Page 190
1
                     A private consulting engineer.
                                                      Lipton
 2
           I am doing a project right now that's got six --
3
     eight bag -- eight cartridge filters on it with
 4
     explosion protection for the tea. I have done --
 5
                     Any aluminum -- any aluminum dust
 6
     systems?
7
              Α
                     Yep. Did the one for Odermath, which
8
     was the one that had the explosions. We did the
 9
     recommendations and the design for those. I don't
10
     think they ever put it in, but we designed it.
11
                     Any other -- any other jobs
              Q
     specifically related to the design of systems for
12
     aluminum dust as either working in private industry or
13
14
     as a consulting engineer?
                     I deal in a lot of different dusts.
15
16
    Metal -- I am trying to think. It would be just
    primarily aluminum. It's usually aluminum and other
17
     components of aluminum. It's hard to say, I mean,
18
    because I have done -- I have done a lot, and it's
19
     been a lot of years of doing it.
20
21
                     I know it's late in the afternoon, but
22
     nothing comes to mind here as you sit here today?
23
              Α
                     No, but I can get you a list. If you
24
     require a list, I can get you a list of projects.
```

Page 189 1 remember if I did aluminum, but I did work on 2 explosive designs. I did both the manufacturing as 3 well as being responsible for engineering in our 4 design-build business, so I still did a lot of design work as well. 5 6 0 What was your job title? 7 Α Operations manager. 8 And who did you report to in that job? 9 Α Wayne Cuthbertson was vice president. 10 What were the years you were there? 0 11 Α I was there from 1981 to 1999, I think. 12 Q Any other experience that goes into this statement that you have designed and been 13 14 responsible for the manufacture of hundreds of bag houses? 15 16 Α I mean, I have designed systems, total 17 dust collection systems. 18 Who, when, and where? 0 19 Who, when, and where? A lot of them Α 20 would have had your competitor's equipment on it. That would have been Torit, Nucor Steel, Pontiac 21 22 Foods. 23 And this is as a private consulting Q 24 engineer?

```
Page 188
 1
     dust systems. Could you give me a bit of explanation
 2
     of that or expand on that?
 3
              Α
                     When I worked for Pneumafil
 4
     Corporation, we built reverse air bag houses, the
 5
     pulse-jet bag houses, and I was responsible for
     manufacturing of those. For about six years, I ran
 6
 7
     the manufacturing for it. That would have been a
 8
     competitor of Dustex. We built cartridge filters.
 9
     built big reverse airs. Primarily, those were going
10
     in the coal industry, wood industry, furniture. And
11
     just about everything that we sent out the door had
     explosion venting on it.
12
                     Any aluminum dust applications while
13
14
     you were in that position?
15
                     Any aluminum dust?
16
              Q
                     Yes, sir.
17
                     We built bag houses. We built
     cartridges that were on aluminum dust.
18
19
                     Were you ever involved in any specific
              Q
     design of a system that was to handle aluminum dust
20
21
     while you were at that job?
2.2
                     At Pneumafil?
              Α
23
                     Yes, sir.
              Q
24
              Α
                     I did other metal dusts. I don't
```

```
Page 187
 1
                     All right. Can you explain how he
              0
 2
     could have seen through a blade that was --
 3
              Α
                     The blade may not have been down.
 4
     blade may have been -- there may have been enough dust
 5
     holding it up or the blade may have had the hinge fail
 6
     prior to it and not allow it to close. I mean, there
     is different explanations, but they are all --
 8
              0
                     That would be a matter of speculation,
     wouldn't it?
 9
10
              Α
                     Yeah, speculation.
11
                     THE VIDEOGRAPHER: Need to change the
12
              disk within the next ten minutes.
13
                     MR. HUDGINS: You want to do that now?
14
                     THE VIDEOGRAPHER: Sure, that's fine.
15
             Off the Record.
16
17
                      (A recess was taken.)
18
19
     BY MR. HUDGINS:
20
                     Mr. Schloss, I just have a couple more
              Q
21
     questions about your experience. Pages 1 and 2 of
     your report say that you have designed and been
22
     responsible for the manufacture of hundreds of bag
23
24
     houses as well as conveyance equipment for combustible
```

```
Page 186
 1
     available.
 2
                      So would your opinion change in terms
 3
     of where this fire originated?
 4
              Α
                     Again, part of what I -- what I based
 5
     it on was Hodges' eyewitness testimony.
                     You haven't tried to recreate the
 6
 7
     conditions in that vent looking down to --
 8
              Α
                      I try not to create fireballs.
 9
              0
                     No, I am not --
10
              Α
                     Or explosions.
11
                      I am not suggesting that. I am talking
              Q
     about the ability to see down through that blast
12
13
             You haven't tried to recreate that --
     damper.
14
              Α
                     No.
15
              Q
                     -- those conditions, have you?
16
              Α
                     No.
17
                     And so you are accepting Hodges'
     testimony that he could see through the backblast
18
     damper all the way to where the duct took a right-hand
19
20
     turn?
21
              Α
                      Yeah, because that was -- again, that
22
     was prior to the explosion, you know, which is going
     to be more reliable than after the explosion side of
23
24
     it.
```

Page 185 1 vacuum apparatus, that heat energy would travel in 2 both -- opposite directions simultaneously? 3 Α In an explosion it's going to go equal 4 direction. It's going to find the path of least 5 resistance. 6 So that there would have been fire 7 coming out the end where the two plaintiffs were standing on the --8 9 You would have seen a fireball -- you 10 would have seen a fireball coming out at the workers. 11 The fireball would have subsequently went the other way into the dust collector. You would have seen the 12 explosion on the dust collector with a very intense 13 14 light on the outside of the building. 15 And, again, if you turned them around 16 and you said, okay, if you had the minor flash to start with and the major flash was second, then I 17 would say it was inside the building and moved 18 19 outside. 20 Would your opinion be any different if Q 21 Hodges was looking and saw the fireball, but the video 22 system was inoperable so we didn't have that evidence? 23 Α Again, you would have to use the 24 best -- the best evidence that you have that's

- 1 originating where the vacuum apparatus was creating a 2 spark and traveled in and then caused the explosion, 3 what would have been different about the video that 4 you observed? 5 The initial -- the -- in the case of 6 that, the initial flash that would have been in the 7 building would have been larger and would have been 8 first prior to the bag house collapsing. Because the 9 fire would have went the same direction either way in 10 that duct coming back out, you would have seen the 11 inside light up. Then you would have seen the outside light up and the intensity of the explosion again. 12 What I was looking at, the intensity of the fireball 13 was outside the plant, and the intensity of the 14 15 fireball that would have been inside the plant is what 16 I was comparing on the videos. 17 All right. If you accept --Because the other way around I would 18 say -- if it was the other way around, that the inside 19 20 lit up not to the brightness that it did, the outside 21 would have lit up later, then I would have said it 22 would have been the other way around.
- 23 Q Would you agree with me that had the 24 source of ignition been the spark created by that

Page 183 1 out through a vent. I have calculated the forces that 2 come out from the vent that go against the wall that 3 would -- you know, in this case I didn't calculate 4 those, but it calculated as how much force was it 5 going to have against the wall, not blow the panels off. 6 7 Q Wouldn't it be fair to say that you 8 looked at the video, and it reinforced what you 9 believed based on --10 Α No. 11 -- your accepting Hodges' testimony? 12 No, because I looked at it as two Α things, as that was taking Hodges' testimony and the 13 video was one part of it. Taking the -- the -- having 14 the fire on the inside of it versus that video didn't 15 16 make sense. 17 Now, if the fire had originated in the ductwork and --18 19 We are talking hypothetically now, Α 20 right? 21 Hypothetically, if you choose to use Q 22 that word. -- and heat energy had traveled in the direction of the normal flow of the system into the 23 24 bag house and caused the explosion with the fire

- 1 explosions and fireballs that travel from explosions
- 2 and, I mean, just the experience that I have in the
- 3 business. I am not a video expert on it. It's based
- 4 on what the flashes would be and what the sequence, in
- 5 my professional opinion, was.
- 6 Q But have you made a study at any time
- 7 in your career of thermodynamics or the nature of
- 8 explosions and such?
- 9 A I have read them. I don't -- I don't
- 10 sit down and do intense thermodynamics.
- 11 Q I mean, when you are looking at the
- 12 video, you are looking at it just like one of these
- 13 lawyers could look at it and come up with an opinion.
- 14 That doesn't require any special expertise, does it?
- 15 A No, because the opinion that I'm coming
- 16 up with is is based on what the intensity of the
- 17 explosion would look like in those two -- and what the
- 18 fireballs would look like in those two different
- 19 instances.
- 20 Q Have you ever observed that type of
- 21 explosion firsthand?
- 22 A Not firsthand. I have seen videos of
- 23 explosions in bag houses. I have calculated the flame
- 24 ball or the fireball dimensions that are going to come

Page 181 1 the building, and the secondary flash was on the 2 inside of the building, you know, which would 3 represent the fire coming down the ductwork. 4 Q Now, did you attempt to break down that 5 video into segments of seconds in terms of what you could observe? 6 7 Α I watched it frame by frame. 8 Did you attempt to break it down into actual seconds, tenths of seconds? 9 10 I don't know what -- frame by frame was 11 pretty -- I looked at frame by frame and looked at the sequence in the frames. 12 So your opinion was based on a frame by 13 14 frame, and that gave you some sense of sequence and time? 15 16 Α Gave me sequence of explosions. know, whether that was a hundredth of a second per 17 frame or a thousandth of a second per frame, I don't 18 19 know. 20 What about your particular engineering Q training gives you the ability to look at that video 21 22 differently from some layperson and draw conclusions 23 from it? 24 Α Just in the training I have had on

Page 180 1 BY MR. HUDGINS: 2 Q Those were the two that you were 3 principally concerned with. You ruled out the 4 explosion originating in the duct based upon 5 Mr. Hodges' testimony and the video. Is that fair to 6 say? 7 Α Yes. 8 All right. Now, I want you to assume a 9 hypothetical. I want you to assume that Hodges was 10 looking the other way, didn't see any fireball. 11 now you have got all the facts that you have considered, including just the video instead of 12 Hodges' testimony. Would that change your opinion? 13 14 Α Just the video? 15 Q Just the video. That's all you got. 16 Α Yes. I mean, just the video without his eyewitness thing, I would still say that the 17 explosion started in the bag house. 18 19 And tell me exactly why. How do you 20 believe -- what about that video makes --21 Well, because of the intensity of the Α 22 flash on the outside. The intensity of the flash and 23 the sequence of flashes, that the major flash was on 24 the -- was the initial one that was on the outside of

```
Page 179
                     Or a blast door.
 1
              0
                     To fail?
 2
              Α
 3
              Q
                     Yes, sir.
 4
              Α
                     I mean, that's -- you are talking about
 5
     apples and oranges. You say, well --
 6
                     In other words, could pressure piling
 7
     have explained why the seams burst apart, but the --
                     No, because there is no pressure
 8
 9
             There is no pressure piling involved in a
     single unit. Pressure piling involves multiple units
10
11
     that are connected together.
                     So you don't think there was any
12
              Q
     possibility of pressure piling?
13
14
                     There was no pressure -- in my opinion,
15
     there are no possibility of pressure piling.
16
                     All right. You investigated two
              Q
     possible causes for this explosion, one being the use
17
     of the PVC attached to the flexible hose and creating
18
     static electricity up in the duct versus the
19
20
     exothermic reaction in the bag house itself?
21
                     MR. BROWN: I think he said he narrowed
2.2
              it down to two. He went through a number of
23
              them, and then came down to two.
24
                     THE WITNESS:
                                   Yeah.
```

Page 178 1 pressure. 2 Q Are you familiar with the term "pressure piling"? 3 4 Α Yes. 5 0 And can you explain that for me, 6 please. 7 Pressure piling is is if you have an Α 8 explosion in one vessel that's located adjacent to a 9 second vessel, that the explosive pressure in the 10 first one is going to go into the second one. If the 11 second one has any subsequent explosion, instead of starting out at atmospheric pressure or slightly above 12 it, you are going to be starting out at that point 13 14 four bars. You will see pressure piling typically 15 where you have a cyclone ahead of a dust collector 16 where you will have an explosion either in the cyclone going into the dust collector or a dust collector 17 going back into a cyclone. But pressure piling -- in 18 this case with one device and one unit, there wouldn't 19 20 be pressure piling would not come into play. 21 In general, if there is pressure 22 piling, can that cause a correctly designed relief valve to fail? 23 24 Α What relief valve?

```
1
     size of the vent that you recommend?
 2
              Α
                     No.
                          It is really based on the Kst of
 3
     the -- more on the Kst value than it is on anything
 4
     else. Because what you are looking for is you want
 5
     the vent to open up and relieve the pressure prior to
 6
     getting to the P-reduced. So the -- you want to size
7
     it say at four-tenths of a bar for the closure to rip
     apart. The explosion vents or the explosion doors
 8
 9
     would typically be set at .1 bars so that it would
10
     relieve that pressure. And the generation of the
11
     pressure over time would give it adequate time to vent
     prior to ripping the dust collector open.
12
                     If the P-reduced figure was greater,
13
14
     wouldn't that justify a smaller vent area?
15
              Α
                     If the P-reduced area was greater than
16
     .4 or .3, that would reduce it, but I didn't see
     anything that -- in terms of additional reinforcing or
17
     additional -- versus what I am used to in a Dustex
18
     bag -- Dustex bag collector has reinforcing on the
19
20
     outside of it. When you are increasing it, you are
     going to see reinforcing space twice as often, thicker
21
22
     gauges. I didn't see any of that. Nor would they
23
     sell. That would have been noted, I am sure, on the
24
     order saying that it was designed at a higher
```

```
Page 176
 1
     collector to withstand the Pmax. Typically, it's done
 2
     in the pharmaceutical industry, but you are taking a
 3
     dust collector that costs $25,000 to a industrial
 4
     plant to, you know, half a million dollars in a
 5
     pharmaceutical plant. It will actually -- you design
 6
     the dust collector to withstand those pressures.
 7
              Q
                     Where did you get your Pmax figure?
 8
              Α
                      I got it out of NFPA 68.
 9
                     And how did you determine that the
10
     figure you chose should be applied in this case?
11
              Α
                     Because that was -- in the NFPA 68,
12
     that was applicable at the time for sizing explosion
13
     vents.
14
                     For dust?
              Q
                     For aluminum dust.
15
              Α
16
              0
                     For aluminum?
17
              Α
                     Dust.
18
                     Dust. And is that powder or dust?
              0
                      It says aluminum dust, so I would
19
              Α
     assume that's dust.
20
21
                     Any dust?
              0
22
                     Assume that's dust.
              Α
23
                     Now, if the Pmax figure was smaller,
              Q
24
     would that affect your calculations in terms of the
```

Page 175 1 it was designed to --2 Α Well, if you call knocking the panels 3 off the wall of the building and endangering people on 4 the other side of it, if you say that's the function 5 that you designed it for, then probably so. But --But it contained --6 0 7 It wasn't in a safe -- it was not a Α safe operation, and the explosion on it -- you do not 8 9 design it to have structural failure. It will be a 10 little bit different if a guy would have been standing out there next to it when it fell down. 11 discussion would be a little bit different. You need 12 to take safety into consideration of --13 14 Well, you wouldn't want to have 15 somebody standing next to one of those blast doors 16 when they came sailing off there --17 And that's why NFPA tells you that you have to put up chains around your blast door saying 18 19 don't stand here. 20 Right. Now, Pmax, what is that? Q 21 Α Pmax is the maximum pressure that was 22 generated during the dust test, and that determines 23 how strong the explosion could be. You use it in

designing dust collectors in that you can build a dust

24

Page 174 1 properly. 2 Α I mean, they were calibrated at the --3 I think 30 pounds, and that's what -- when they were 4 taken out and all the experts got around in a circle 5 and decided that was the value that those latches were 6 going to open up at. 7 Q All right. But, again, the quality and 8 maintenance of those latches is not part of --9 Well, again, for the amount of 10 destruction that you see in it, it wouldn't be that --11 if the latches would have almost never had to open to 12 get the destruction forces in the tearing that dust collector apart. 13 14 So if you had a dust collector of 200, 15 the Kst was 200, and it proved that the doors were the 16 right size and the latches were the right size, I still would expect the latches to open at some point, 17 but that fail the size -- the side of the ductwork --18 or fail the side of the enclosure of the dust 19 20 collector takes a lot of pressure. Actually rip the 21 metal, not ripping the wells. 22 Didn't this bag house -- even though 23 the seams split, didn't it basically perform its 24 function of containing the explosion to the area where

Page 173 1 getting and where are you seeing that dust. 2 Q All right. Kst 415, would you agree 3 that that's a relatively high value? 4 Α Aluminum is a very explosive dust. 5 0 But even for aluminum, that's on the 6 high end? 7 Α No. I have seen aluminum that's higher 8 than that. If it turned out that the actual Kst 9 10 was 200, would that impact your opinion in terms of the suitability of this equipment? 11 If I could find a test that showed that 12 Α it was 200, then I would make that determination. 13 14 And that would impact your opinion in 15 terms of the suitability of this bag plant --16 Α I would raise the question is why did it rip -- even if the -- if that calculation showed 17 that was the right size door, then at that point then 18 I would be wondering why did it rip the whole unit 19 apart instead of the door just opening up. 20 21 Perhaps the failure of the latches 22 could be one explanation? 23 Failure of the latches? Α 24 Yeah, the Brixon latches not operating Q

- 1 time it was shaved or created in the mechanical
- 2 process to the point where it reached the bag house,
- 3 would that offset the Kst value some? It would,
- 4 wouldn't it?
- 5 A It's going to change over time. How
- 6 fast it degrades again would have to be based on what
- 7 you were testing.
- 8 Q Isn't it prudent to do the Kst testing
- 9 at the point of creation as a safety feature?
- 10 A Yeah. Well, what you want to do is you
- 11 want to test it at the point of what you are going to
- 12 do something with it. If it's created and goes into a
- 13 wet dust collector, it doesn't really matter because
- 14 you are -- it's not going into a dry dust collector.
- 15 If you are collecting it at that point and it's going
- 16 out into a dust collector, you want to have the
- 17 collection out of the dust collector. When they run
- 18 the test, if you send them a 5-pound sample, they will
- 19 sift the 5-pound sample down to get only the
- 20 particulate that's 75 microns and smaller, which is
- 21 going to give you the best chance of having an
- 22 explosion, and it's going to simulate what you are
- 23 going to have in the bag house. So where you get it
- 24 doesn't really factor in as much as what are you

Page 171 1 it was was insufficient for any applications involving aluminum dust? 2 3 Α Again, it depends on what the values of 4 aluminum dust are, what the design values or the 5 combustion values. Again, in the worst possible case is what you would design it about. In NFPA 68 in 2002 6 7 they gave a value for aluminum dust at a Kst of 415. 8 When I did my calculations, that's what I based it on. 9 I based it on the worst case that -- the worst case of 10 available information. Again, without knowing what 11 the dust is, the most conservative way of doing it is to size it at that value. 12 So Kst of 415, would that be more like 13 14 the baby powder dust that we talked about earlier? 15 Α No, because you can be on -- some of 16 that dust and the powders can be up in the five and six hundreds. 17 But Ks 415 would be a real powdery 18 19 material? 20 Α It wouldn't have to be powdery. wouldn't have to be aluminum powder. It really 21 22 depends on -- you can -- it depends on the material

Central Virginia Reporters (540) 380-5017

If the aluminum dust oxidized from the

and the dust characteristics.

Q

23

24

Page 170 1 handle the explosion of aluminum dust. Do you know if they got any information 2 3 at all regarding Kst value? 4 Α No, because I -- there was no testing 5 that I know of on the dust itself. 6 Do you know if they asked for it? 7 I have -- have not seen that in the Α 8 documents if they have asked for that. 9 Do you know anything about any 10 disclaimers by Dustex based upon their inability to get information regarding the Kst value? 11 There is a disclaimer in their terms 12 Α and conditions that were in a letter, but that 13 14 didn't -- there was no -- there was no disclaimer on 15 their proposal saying that they didn't have that 16 information. That was only after the fact when it was terms and conditions. 17 So that's the only disclaimer that you 18 are aware of? 19 20 That's the only disclaimer that I saw. Α 21 I mean, I can look. 22 Now, would it be your opinion that the bag house that was sold and ultimately installed at 23 24 Federal-Mogul with its blast door being the size that

```
Page 169
 1
                     And when you are talking about dust, is
              0
 2
     there a way to quantify properties of dust with a --
 3
                     MR. BROWN: Are you trying to find
 4
              something?
 5
                     THE WITNESS:
 6
 7
     BY MR. HUDGINS:
 8
                     What is a Kst value?
 9
                     Kst is a -- Kst is actually a German
10
     word that I am not sure exactly what it means, but
     it's a calculated value. And it's -- when you run a
11
12
     test on the explosive characteristics of dust, the
     values that you will get is change in pressure over
13
     change in time. Based on that times a cube root of
14
15
     the volume of the enclosure will then tell you what
16
     the Kst is. It's a relative number. The higher the
17
     number, the more explosive the dust is.
                     Do you know whether or not any
18
              0
     information regarding the Kst value of the dust at
19
     Federal-Mogul was given to Dustex?
20
21
                     From the information that I saw, I
22
     don't -- I don't see that. But, at the same time, if
     Dustex knew it was aluminum dust, it was their
23
     responsibility to make sure that their equipment would
24
```

Page 168 1 were still set at what the factory setting would have 2 been. 3 Q So the latches on this bag house at 4 Federal-Mogul don't factor into your opinion one way 5 or the other? 6 Well, they factor in as in the number 7 of latches and the size of the doors and how well they 8 opened up. You could have -- you could have opened 9 them up earlier with less pressure, but then you run 10 the risk of the doors just coming open by themselves. 11 Who was responsible for designing this Q system based on your understanding of the facts in 12 this case? 13 14 Per my understanding of the facts, it 15 was a collaborative effort between Carrington 16 Engineering, FM, or Federal-Mogul. The information was transmitted to Dustex, so Dustex knew what the 17 dust was going to be in that bag house and, you know, 18 knew what the system was. 19 20 What did Dustex know precisely about Q 21 that dust based on your understanding? 2.2 Α Aluminum dust. 23 And that's all they knew? Q 24 Α That's right.

Page 167 1 to hold the door closed in operation. But in terms of 2 an explosion, it releases and opens the latch at a 3 predetermined -- at a field-settable or 4 factory-settable limit. 5 And those latches can be adjusted up or 6 down in terms of --7 Α Well, you can adjust them up and down. 8 It would change the pressure, but then you would be 9 changing what the -- the Pred on the unit would need 10 to be. 11 All right. Were you able to inspect Q the Brixon latches at the plant? 12 Yes. We looked at them as a group of 13 14 technical experts and removed them from the door. 15 Were you able to determine whether or Q 16 not those latches had been properly maintained during the term of their use at the Federal-Mogul plant? 17 18 The -- I didn't have any access to maintenance records on the latches or if they had been 19

They were not rusted shut. A lot of

times on latches similar to that, you will end up with

it, and they looked to be in good condition. And they

a rust that they won't open up. That the adjustment

screws turned easily or turned as expected to be in

20

21

22

23

24

maintained.

Page 166 1 I saw in their specifications it's designed to 2 withstand plus or minus 15 degrees -- 15 inches of 3 water. So, I mean, it's up to Dustex to design 4 something that's going to meet those requirements. 5 But that's not -- in your opinion, when 6 you say that the Dustex bag house as designed and sold 7 to Federal-Mogul was deficient for its intended 8 purpose, you are not talking about the gauge of the 9 metal. You are strictly --10 Α No. 11 Q -- talking about the size of the blast 12 doors? No, I am not talking about the gauge of 13 Α I am talking about the explosion 14 the metal. 15 protection on the equipment and the results of that. 16 0 Which is the size of the blast doors, and that's it? 17 18 Yes. Α 19 How do the latches on those blast doors Q 20 factor into your opinion, if at all? 21 The latches actually are calibrated to 22 open up at a certain pressure. So the way the door operates, it's like a -- the Brixon latch is similar 23 24 to a industrial refrigerator latch where it's designed

Page 165 1 houses. 2 Would you agree that they make a good Q 3 product? 4 Α They make a product in the industrial 5 market that's equal to other competitors in that 6 market. 7 0 So, as far as Dustex is concerned, you 8 only fault the size of the blast doors that were on 9 this particular bag house at this particular plant? 10 I felt that it contributed in part of 11 the total system as in the doors being too small would have increased the explosion -- would increase the 12 total explosion pressure in it that would have caused 13 the bag house to fail, rip the ductwork down, and 14 15 possibly contribute somewhat to the failure of the 16 Kirk & Blum backdraft damper due to mechanical means, not pressure means. I don't think that -- that the 17 damage that I saw again to the Kirk & Blum was 18 designed by mechanical or was mechanical ripping. 19 was by pressure. 20 21 You don't fault the gauge of metal that 22 was used in this particular bag house at the Federal-Mogul plant, do you? 23 24 Α That's up to Dustex to design a system.

- 1 think approximately double in size, do you have an
- 2 opinion as to whether or not there would have been any
- 3 heat energy that would have traveled in a reverse flow
- 4 back up the ductwork in any event?
- 5 A It's an explosion. It's going to go up
- 6 that duct. It doesn't -- it doesn't look at it and
- 7 say, well, oh, here is a door that I can blow open.
- 8 Let me wait until the door opens up, and then we will
- 9 all go out there.
- 10 It still went through the fan. It went
- 11 back through that duct, went down into the 55-gallon
- 12 drum. And that's why NFPA requires that you isolate
- 13 all those to eliminate a future problem.
- 14 Q So there would have been a fireball
- 15 going back toward those two plaintiffs on the scissor
- 16 lift in any event?
- 17 A In any event, you would have had a
- 18 fireball going back through there because you had an
- 19 explosion in the bag house, yes.
- 20 Now, as far as the bag house that was
- 21 manufactured and sold by Dustex, you are not here to
- 22 say that that bag house was -- was a bad product for
- 23 all applications, are you?
- A No. I have installed Dustex bag

Page 163 1 That's why NFPA requires that you have 2 minimum conveying velocities in your ductwork so you 3 do not have a buildup of dust anywhere in those systems. 4 5 So what I was getting to is: Do you 6 have an opinion as to whether or not there was any 7 combustion of material that was in the ductwork 8 between the backblast damper that we have talked about today and the open end where the two plaintiffs were 9 10 standing? 11 Α In my opinion, yes, there would be combustion because you have fresh fuel and you have --12 but it wouldn't be dependent -- dependent on them 13 14 stirring it up. You are looking at a pressure wave 15 that's moving at the speed of sound is a lot -- is 16 going to generate a lot more turbulence and a lot more 17 dust pickup than anything they could do with that 18 lance. 19 All right. Now, as I understand your Q 20 expert opinion with regard to Dustex, you believe that 21 the blast doors were too small for this application? 22 My calculations show they were. Α 23 Q All right. Had the blast doors been of 24 the size that you specify in your report, which were I

```
1
     the unit ripped open, the fireball went out the side
 2
     of it. So all these places that relieved as well as
 3
     when the backdraft -- backblast damper blew apart,
     that was another source of relieving that pressure.
 4
 5
                     All right. In your scenario, in the
 6
     process that you have described, heat energy traveled
7
     back up and back out the ductwork to where the -- two
8
     of the plaintiffs were on a scissor lift?
 9
              Α
                     Uh-huh.
10
                     And that's where they were injured?
              0
11
              Α
                     Plus, you had fresh fuel in that line
     as well.
12
                     And that was my next question.
13
     have an opinion as to whether the fresh fuel in that
14
15
     ductwork where they were pushing around a vacuum and
16
     stirring up dust, presumably, whether that dust
     combusted when the heat energy traveled back up and
17
     through the ductway in a reverse direction?
18
19
              Α
                     Whether they were stirring it up at
20
     that time or if the ductwork was connected, the energy
21
     would have went along that and picked up the surface
22
     dust and had the same result of a fireball going down
23
     the duct. Instead of coming out into people's faces,
24
     it would have came out into the production equipment.
```

Page 161 1 have been in this bag house with the particular 2 material that was in place there? 3 Α I would know -- I would know if they 4 had had it tested. 5 But you didn't get a sample, so you 0 6 don't know? 7 Α And it was never tested prior to the 8 explosion. 9 So you do agree that you don't know? 10 I agree that I don't know, but it's 11 information that if you did have it, you would use it in your evaluation. 12 All right. Now, in your scenario, the 13 explosion began in the bag house, and there were --14 15 was a shock wave and then followed by a fireball that 16 traveled back through the ductwork and back through the -- and pushed open the backblast damper and went 17 through the ductwork and burned the plaintiffs? 18 19 Well, it took many paths. The same Α fireball could have went -- the same fireball would 20 have went down into the 55-gallon drum. 21 22 fireball would have went out through the fan. 23 Anyplace -- the same fireball -- when the vent did 24 open up, the fireball went out it. When the side of

Page 160 1 And given the type of material, this 0 2 aluminum dust and shavings from the Federal-Mogul 3 industrial process, what temperature would have to be 4 reached for that material to combust? 5 Again, that's -- would be the chemical. 6 It's part of the chemical test with the minimum 7 ignition temperatures. Again, if you had the material 8 tested prior to the explosion, that would be available 9 and you could do it, but that changes by each type of 10 dust. Aluminum could have a range of minimum ignition 11 temperatures based on the particle size. Again, without having the dust, you wouldn't know. 12 13 So is the answer --14 I guess -- let me finish. The other 15 thing, when you were talking about shavings, shavings 16 typically refer to a larger -- a larger particulate. 17 If you look at -- on the exhibit I had on Number 2, I asked the guy who ran the machine at 18 the time if that was typical of the dust that they 19 20 saw, and he agreed it was. I think Doug Edwards was 21 with me at the time. And that's not shavings. 22 dust. 23 All right. But is it fair to say that Q 24 you don't know what the combustion temperature would

```
Page 159
 1
            I don't know if the 55-gallon drum was full and
 2
     backed up into the hopper or if the 55-gallon drum was
 3
     half empty.
 4
              Q
                     Did you see a drum as part of your
 5
     investigation?
 6
                      I did not take pictures of the drum.
 7
     don't remember if the drum was available. I don't
     think it was.
 8
 9
                     Now, in an exothermic reaction,
10
     hydrogen gas is produced. And an explosion can occur
11
     either with the hydrogen reaching a sufficient
     temperature to combust, or the material can get hot
12
13
     enough to combust; is that --
14
              Α
                     Yes.
15
                     And, again, I am a lawyer. I am not a
16
     chemist or a fire expert.
17
              Α
                     Yes.
18
                     But is that -- am I correct in that --
              Q
19
              Α
                     You are correct.
20
                      -- belief? And it's your opinion that
              Q
     it was not hydrogen gas that combusted here, but it
21
22
     was the material itself that got hot enough to
     combust?
23
24
              Α
                     Yes.
```

Page 158 1 accumulation at any particular point in that hopper? 2 I didn't investigate exactly where that 3 point would be in the hopper or in that dust 4 collector, no. 5 And you didn't do any test to determine 6 how the angle of the hopper might affect the 7 particular material that was --8 Α Without having the -- without having 9 the material and the characteristics of the material 10 -- you can run a test where you can test what the 11 angle of repose is, when it will start to become free-flowing. Without the material available, it's 12 not possible to do that test. 13 14 The bag house is designed so that the 15 material collects and goes down the slopes of the 16 hopper into a steel drum? 17 Yes. 18 Now, the explosion didn't start in the steel drum, did it? 19 20 Α Again, I didn't -- I didn't pinpoint where it could have started. You have a lot of fuel 21 22 into it. My understanding from the information was that in the time it was -- at the time that they ran 23 the dust collector, they never emptied the 55-gallon 24

```
Page 157
 1
              0
                     You haven't --
 2
              Α
                     I mean, other than looking at the
 3
     damage and the -- the damage to the bag house and the
 4
     position of the cages on the bags. I would -- my
 5
     assumption was or my opinion was it was in the hopper,
 6
     but to say that it was in a hopper in four inches of
7
     dust, no.
 8
                     All right. Now, for an exothermic
 9
     reaction to occur, there has to be sufficient
     accumulation of the material that then combines with
10
     H2O to cause the reaction?
11
12
              Α
                     Yes.
13
                     Where in the hopper, according to your
14
     experience, would there be --
15
              Α
                     Anywhere.
16
                     -- a place where there would be
17
     sufficient accumulation?
18
                     Anywhere in that hopper. Depends on
     whether the material falls down. If the angle of
19
     repose of the material doesn't slide, you may end up
20
21
     with two or three inches of material around the entire
22
     hopper.
                     In this case, in this particular case,
23
              Q
24
     you don't have any idea that there was sufficient
```

```
Page 156
 1
                     I mean, that's past my area of
 2
     expertise in that I understand how they -- you know,
 3
     the -- I understand dust collectors and explosions and
 4
     exothermic reactions. I am not a trained fire
 5
     investigator that says here is an acceleration mark
     and here is where it moved up the side of the hopper.
 6
 7
     That's not what -- my expertise.
 8
                     That would take a cause and origin
 9
     expert?
10
                     Which I am not, other than the cause
11
     side of -- cause and origin as in general location,
     but not specific that it started three feet up the
12
     hopper right here.
13
14
                     So it's your opinion that there was an
15
     exothermic reaction that caused an explosion somewhere
16
     in the bag house, but you don't have an opinion as to
17
     where that might have been?
                     Where the point of origin is or the
18
     explosion?
19
20
                     Where it started, where the actual
              0
21
     reaction occurred that --
22
              Α
                     No.
23
                     -- caused this explosion.
              Q
24
              Α
                     No.
```

```
Page 155
              questions for now. Thank you for your time.
 1
 2
 3
                            EXAMINATION
 4
 5
     BY MR. HUDGINS:
                     Mr. Schloss, I am next. I am David
 6
 7
     Hudgins, one of the lawyers for Dustex Corporation.
 8
     Did you make a determination as to the precise point
 9
     of origin for the fire that started the explosion in
10
     the bag house?
11
                     Define precise.
                     Where exactly was the source of
12
              Q
     combustion in the explosion that you believe started
13
     this chain of events?
14
15
              Α
                     As in -- no, not into the context of it
16
     was in the hopper two feet up and three feet over.
     didn't do a, you know, analysis of where the fire was
17
     or where the fire originated into it.
18
19
                     All right. You had a chance to look at
              Q
     the bag house itself, albeit some time after the
20
21
     explosion?
22
              Α
                     Yes.
                     You didn't try to determine where
23
              Q
24
     inside that bag house the point of origin of this --
```

. ,

```
1 was based on, the depositions and, you know, invoices,
```

- 2 design information, specs like that, but nothing that
- 3 says here is what your findings need to be.
- 4 Q Oh, no. And so you are clear on what
- 5 my question is about, I understand that they provided
- 6 you with documents, including deposition transcripts,
- 7 the exhibits to the depositions, and other materials.
- 8 What I am asking about is: During your
- 9 conversations with them, did they provide you any
- 10 information from them to you orally that you used to
- 11 rely upon in your report?
- 12 A I think the only thing, and we have
- 13 already discussed it, is just the operation hours of
- 14 the plant, was a question I asked about it. But other
- 15 than that, no.
- Okay. And just to be clear, because I
- 17 may not remember when we went over that --
- 18 A It was a half hour to an hour and a
- 19 half that it was shut down prior to the incident.
- 20 Q That's information that you received
- 21 from them?
- 22 A That's the only thing I can think of
- 23 that I received in an oral basis.
- MR. MORRIS: Okay. That's all my

```
Page 153
 1
                     MR. MORRIS: I think it's the same as
 2
              whether or not your client has had a
 3
              conference with an attorney. You can ask
              whether it occurred, not what the contents of
 5
              it was. But it's not that crucial to me.
 6
              will move on.
 7
                     MR. BROWN: Okay.
 8
 9
     BY MR. MORRIS:
10
                     Okay. You indicated that you did not
              0
11
     bring with you today any notes or other documents
     other than your report and the documents that you
12
13
     reviewed. Do you have a separate file regarding this
     matter which you keep in your office?
14
15
              Α
                     Everything I have if I got information
16
     from Mr. Brown or Mr. Johnson was all electronic, so
     it's all reading. Reading a .pdf, don't print much,
17
     so -- I mean, I don't print it because I can't keep up
18
19
     with it, so...
                     Were Mr. Brown or Mr. Johnson the
20
              0
21
     source of any specific information that you relied
22
     upon in reaching your opinions as expressed in your
     report?
23
                     Just the information that the report
24
              Α
```

```
Page 152
 1
                     I don't know what -- I guess -- I don't
     know what information he had.
 2
 3
              Q
                     Did he provide you with any information
 4
     during that conference call?
 5
              Α
                     No.
                          No.
 6
                     Have you consulted with anyone to
 7
     assist you in the preparation of your report?
 8
              Α
                     No.
 9
                     Did you prepare any drafts of your
     report before producing the final report that was
10
     provided to the defendants?
11
12
                     MR. BROWN: Don't answer that question.
13
                     MR. MORRIS: Based on?
14
                     MR. BROWN: Based on the Federal Rules.
15
              Federal Rules were changed about two years
16
              ago, and that's not a proper subject of
17
              inquiry. Any draft reports are privileged
18
              and are attorney work product specifically by
19
              the Rules.
20
                     MR. MORRIS: I understand we are not
21
              entitled to get them. I am asking whether or
22
              not he prepared any before his final report.
23
                     MR. BROWN: I don't think you get to
              inquire into that.
24
```

```
Page 151
 1
              Α
                          It was Mr. Johnson and Mr. Brown
                     No.
 2
     as well.
 3
              Q
                     When was that?
 4
              Α
                     I'd have to look. Somewhere around the
 5
     beginning of September. I don't know if they -- they
 6
     probably have better dates and better ideas, but...
 7
                     Within the last three months?
 8
              Α
                     Yes.
                     And did Mr. McGinley provide you any
 9
10
     information that you used in preparing your report?
11
              Α
                     No.
12
                     Did you express any disagreements with
    Mr. McGinley regarding any opinions that he expressed
13
     during that conference?
14
                     No. I mean, it wasn't a conference
15
16
     where we were discussing opinions.
17
                     What was the conference about?
18
                     It was more logistical, making sure
     that we had all the information.
19
20
                     Okay. Was there any information that
              Q
     you had that Mr. McGinley did not?
21
                     I don't recall. I don't -- I don't
22
              Α
     think so. I think we had similar information.
23
24
              Q
                     Any information --
```

```
Page 150
 1
                     In your expert disclosure, you provided
              0
 2
     us with a copy of your CV?
 3
              Α
                     Uh-huh.
 4
              Q
                     Is that current, or are there any
 5
     additions you need to make?
 6
                     I am now a licensed engineer in the
     state of Arizona as well, and I sold my business to a
 7
 8
     firm in Greenville called Synterra, S-Y-N-T-E-R-R-A.
 9
     Now I am an employee of Synterra in the middle of a
10
     working transition from one business to the next.
11
                     Okay. And as I am sure you know, the
              Q
     trial for this case is scheduled in February of 2014.
12
13
              Δ
                     Yes.
14
                     And do you plan on attending in person
     for that trial?
15
16
              Α
                     Yes.
                     Have you had any contact with Patrick
17
     McGinley regarding his opinions in this case?
18
19
              Α
                           I have not seen his final report.
     We had a meeting on Skype, but I think he was at the
20
     point of putting his opinions together. I have not
21
22
     seen what his final report was.
                     Was it just you and Mr. McGinley during
23
24
     that conference?
```

```
Page 149
 1
     So without having that --
 2
                     Which we don't have.
                     Which you don't know, so again you are
 3
              Α
 4
     quessing and using an assumption in doing it. But the
 5
     difference between, you know, 15 milliseconds and 20
     milliseconds isn't a lot of difference.
 6
 7
                     MR. MORRIS: I want to take a quick
 8
              break.
 9
                     THE WITNESS:
                                   Okay.
                     THE VIDEOGRAPHER: Off the Record.
10
11
12
                     (A recess was taken.)
13
14
     BY MR. MORRIS:
15
                     Mr. Schloss, we are back after a short
16
             And usually when I ask for that break, that
    means I am getting very close to the end of my
17
     questions, but there is three other attorneys that
18
     will come after me.
19
20
                     I want to ask you, have you been asked
    by plaintiffs' counsel to prepare a report addressing
21
22
     the opinions that were provided by the defense experts
     in this case?
23
24
              Α
                     No, I have not.
```

```
Page 148
 1
     determine what the rate of propagation for the flame
 2
     was?
 3
              Α
                     No, not on this specific case, no.
 4
              Q
                     Okay. Is there a set formula that you
 5
     would use for that?
 6
                     Deflagration is a flame front moving at
 7
     less than the speed of sound. The speed of sound is
 8
     quite high, so it's going to move very quickly through
 9
     that ductwork.
10
                     So between the time that Mr. Hodges
11
     says he sees the fireball and the time that it reaches
12
     the open end of the duct where he is standing, can
13
     you --
14
                     Milliseconds.
              Α
15
                     Well, okay. Based on your experience
16
     and to a reasonable degree of engineering probability,
     can you tell us how long it would take for the
17
     fireball to get to Mr. Hodges --
18
19
                     I can calculate it, but I don't have it
              Α
     with me here.
20
21
              0
                     Okay.
22
                     But I can calculate you -- calculate
     that. Again, the rate of the fireball is also
23
24
     dependent on the chemical characteristics of the dust.
```

- 1 already done. The whole explosion is going to take --
- 2 and NFPA shows this. Chilworth shows this. In
- 3 three-tenths of a second -- from the time it starts
- 4 until the time a building could come down is about
- 5 three-tenths of a second.
- 6 Q Now, assuming for the purposes of this
- 7 question that the alternative theory that you
- 8 considered, that the explosion started in the ductwork
- 9 as a result of sparks from the static electricity, the
- 10 explosion there would create a pressure wave as well,
- 11 correct?
- 12 A If you had an explosion in the
- 13 ductwork? If you have an explosion anywhere, you are
- 14 going to get a pressure wave and you are going to get
- 15 a fireball.
- Okay. Would that pressure be
- 17 sufficient to force open the backblast damper flap?
- 18 A It would lift it up because the
- 19 ductwork that you are talking about having the
- 20 explosion in is prior to that damper. So it would
- 21 open up -- it would force it open. It's not going to
- 22 stop an explosion in the ductwork.
- 23 Q Now, you just referred to how quickly
- 24 this explosion occurred. So can you tell us, did you

Page 146 1 fails, what's the impact on the other one failing. 2 So when I looked at both of these, I 3 looked at did the failure -- did the failure of the 4 bag house cause the backdraft damper to fail? And in 5 my conclusion, it did not, that they failed equally 6 during the explosion. 7 And so that I am clear, the presence of 8 the 4 to 5 inches of dust is not relevant to that 9 opinion? 10 It would have -- again, passing the --11 passing a flame front and withstanding an explosion are two different things. Closing against 4 and 5 12 inches of dust is going to isolate an -- is going to 13 isolate a flame front. In the isolation of having the 14 15 construction of the damper be able to withstand that 16 pressure doesn't really involve passing that flame 17 front or not. 18 If that flap is partially open, it will withstand some of the pressure, correct? It would --19 20 Well, no. It would still withstand a Α very, very small portion of it, but you are talking 21 22 about an explosion that's taking place in less than a tenth of a second. This isn't a gradual looking at it 23 24 and saying, oh, I think it's going to explode.

```
Page 145
 1
     BY MR. MORRIS:
 2
              Q
                     -- as this one did?
 3
                     MR. BROWN: Before you answer that
 4
              question, I'd like to interpose an objection.
 5
              The appropriate standard is engineering
 6
              probability and not certainty. You can --
 7
 8
     BY MR. MORRIS:
 9
                     I apologize again, and I adopt
10
     probability.
11
                     Engineering probability of it is that
     it would withstand that. Because it's designed at .4
12
     bars of pressure, it has a factor of safety built into
13
     it the same way the bag house does. The bag house may
14
15
     have .4 bars of pressure, has a reduced pressure, but
16
     the ultimate pressure before things start tearing
17
     apart is 33 percent greater than that. So it would
     have withstood a larger -- a -- it would have
18
19
     withstood a larger explosion or more intense explosion
20
     than the existing backdraft damper.
21
                     So my opinion, more than likely, in
22
     engineering certainty, is it would have withstood that
23
     pressure. The bag house and the backdraft damper
24
     again need to be looked at as a system, because if one
```

```
1
     That's called for in NFPA. It says all components
 2
     shall be designed at the anticipated pressure.
 3
     Anticipated pressure in a dust collection system like
 4
     this would be at what pressure is the bag house
 5
     selected to actually work at, so ...
 6
                     And now -- so my question to you here
7
     is: As you sit here, I think, as I understand it, you
 8
     can't say specifically what the construction of the
 9
     backblast damper should have been for this system
10
     because you don't have the sufficient information to
11
     make that determination; is that correct?
12
              Α
                     I could design you a backdraft damper
     that would withstand that pressure, and it would be
13
     much heavier gauge than what you -- than what was
14
     furnished by Kirk & Blum.
15
16
                     And as you sit here, however, based on
     the circumstances that occurred in this explosion, can
17
     you say to a reasonable degree of engineering
18
     certainty that a -- that a backblast damper that was
19
     constructed to the same pressure point as the bag
20
     house, if that's a fair way of stating it, would have
21
22
     not blown out on the side --
23
                     MR. BROWN: Before you answer that --
```

24

```
Page 143
 1
              Α
                     The configuration of it?
 2
              Q
                     Well, the makeup, the construction,
 3
     the --
 4
              Α
                     The makeup and the construction in a
 5
     dust collection system at an industrial plant similar
 6
     to what we are talking about right here, not
 7
     somebody's air-conditioning ductwork system that's got
 8
     a filter in it or something, but a filter that would
 9
     be manufactured by a company like Dustex would
10
     typically be designed between .3 and .4 bars of
11
     pressure. And that is Pred, or the reduced pressure,
     is what can the closure withstand.
12
                     Once that value is set, then all the
13
14
     components of the system would then have to be capable
15
     of withstanding that. Because when the bag house
     explodes and it sees .4 bars of pressure before the
16
     relief for the chemical suppression goes off, all the
17
     components are going to see .4 bars. That's why when
18
     you design these things, everything has got to be
19
     designed as one total system.
20
                     So the pressure should have been -- the
21
22
     pressure of the components other than the bag house,
23
     even the ductwork between the isolation damper and the
24
     bag house, need to be designed at that pressure.
```

- 1 the bag house walls? 2 Α That was used as an example. It's not 3 a hard and fast rule that it's got to have the same --4 it's got to be designed at the same pressures. 5 houses typically are designed 11- and 12-gauge. 6 dampers are typically designed 11- and 12-gauge. 7 0 Based on the fact that we see the bag 8 house here blew apart in its wall, do you have an 9 opinion as to whether or not a heavier gauge in the 10 backblast damper would have also blown apart under the 11 pressure of this explosion? 12 Without knowing what the pressure on Α the explosion would have been at that point, other 13 than it was greater than what the design pressure of 14
- 17 It may have been at what the correct

both the relief vents and the explosion vent, I

- 18 design should have been, and it would have worked. It
- 19 may have been higher than that. It may have been
- 20 lower than that.

15

16

- 21 Q So, based on your experience, can you
- 22 say based on your evaluation of this system what the
- 23 configuration of the backblast damper should have
- 24 been, in your opinion?

couldn't answer that.

```
Page 141
 1
     context, in talking about a fan, means a blast of air.
 2
     But in terms of a backblast damper in 2002, it refers
 3
     to explosion. Is that --
 4
              Α
                     Yes.
 5
              0
                     -- what you are testifying to?
 6
              Α
                     Yes.
 7
              Q
                     Okay.
 8
              Α
                     It's what's the device used for in that
 9
     -- in the position that it was in was to isolate the
10
     explosion from coming back into the plant --
11
                     I'm sorry, Mr. Schloss. You answered
              Q
     my question. I didn't ask for an explanation as to
12
13
     why you answered yes.
14
                     I'd like to give you an explanation.
              Α
15
              Q
                     Well, your counsel can ask you that
16
     question. I have got my answer, so I am going to move
          Going back to again the fact that the ordered
17
     part was delivered by Kirk & Blum to Federal Mogul as
18
     ordered, in your report you indicate again that a
19
     heavier gauge backblast damper would have been
20
21
     appropriate for this system, correct?
22
              Α
                     Yes.
23
                     And in your report you indicate that
              Q
24
     the backblast damper should have the same thickness as
```

```
Page 140
 1
     BY MR. MORRIS:
 2
              Q
                     What should it be called?
 3
              Α
                     Blast -- backblast damper.
 4
              Q
                     Okay. And are you aware that an
 5
     air-control damper or a cut-off or balancing damper is
 6
     sometimes called a blast gate?
 7
              Α
                     Yes.
                           And if you look in Kirk & Blum's
 8
     catalog, that's what they are called.
 9
                     And -- and that's not an explosion
10
     containment device, is it?
11
              Α
                     No.
12
                     And can you define what the blast
     positions of a fan outlet are?
13
14
                     Sure. You have up blast, down blast,
15
     top horizontal discharge, top angular up, bottom
16
     angular down.
                    There is a lot of -- definitions are
     all in AMCA. And the blast positions on fans really
17
     have nothing to do with a blast coming off an
18
     explosion vent.
19
20
                     That refers to just a blast of air?
              Q
21
              Δ
                     That's a nomenclature used to identify
22
     the rotation of a fan, nothing to do with explosion
     protection.
23
24
              Q
                     So when you use -- so blast in that
```

```
Page 139
 1
                      (Deposition Exhibit Schloss 16 was
 2
              marked and entered into the Record.)
 3
 4
                     MR. BROWN: Let the Record show that
 5
              the invoice that was referred to by the
 6
              witness was Deposition Exhibit Number 16, and
              the diagram that was referred to by the
              witness was Deposition -- now marked as
 8
 9
              Deposition Exhibit Number 15.
10
11
     BY MR. MORRIS:
12
              Q
                     In your report, do you state that the
     Kirk & Blum backblast damper contains a blast gate?
13
14
                     MR. BROWN: Can you give me a page
15
              number, please.
16
                     MR. MORRIS: 19, four sentences from
17
              the bottom.
18
                     THE WITNESS: That's an error on my
19
                     That should say blast back -- a blast
20
              gate is a different device. A blast gate is
21
              a balancing device used in balancing the
22
              airflow in a system. That's just a error on
23
              my part in calling it that.
24
```

```
Page 138
     damper. This is a Kirk & Blum backblast damper, in
 1
 2
     line, from 4 to 18 inches. It's 18-gauge.
 3
     damper, as I see it here, was the damper that I looked
 4
     at, similar construction, similar dimensions. I did
 5
     not check plus or minus, you know, quarter of an inch
 6
     whether it was still the same size, but...
 7
              Q
                     So a straight line --
 8
                     MR. BROWN: Time out because you
              referred to this, and I would ask that it be
 9
10
              marked so we have a clean record, can be
              followed.
11
12
13
                     (Deposition Exhibit Schloss 15 was
14
              marked and entered into the Record.)
15
16
                     MR. ALEXANDER: Brent, he also referred
17
             to that invoice.
18
                     MR. BROWN: Pull out the invoice too,
19
              please.
20
                     THE WITNESS: Want the full invoice?
21
                     MR. BROWN: Sure.
22
                     MR. ALEXANDER: The page you referred
23
              to.
24
                     THE WITNESS: Do you need to see that?
```

```
Page 137
 1
                     And based on the order form, is the
              0
 2
     part that was installed or delivered to Federal-Mogul,
 3
     is that what was on the order sheet?
 4
              Α
                     Again, I didn't work for Kirk & Blum or
 5
     have the information of what Kirk & Blum's -- other
 6
     than what was provided --
 7
                     MR. BROWN:
                                 You can look at that.
 8
                     THE WITNESS: Which was a sketch at the
 9
              -- that was provided on in-line backdraft --
10
              backblast damper.
11
12
     BY MR. MORRIS:
                     We don't have to mark that as an
13
14
     exhibit unless you need to.
15
              Α
                     Do you want to see it?
16
              Q
                     No.
                     But if looking at this, looking at
17
     their invoice -- let me find the invoice. It said
18
     14-inch KB backblast damper, which I am assuming --
19
20
     again making an assumption based on the information
     that it matches the drawing that says Kirk & Blum
21
22
     backdraft damper.
                     This is -- that's Kirk & Blum's invoice
23
24
     to Carrington Engineering calling for a backblast
```

```
Page 136
 1
                     Yes, and it needed to withstand the
 2
     anticipated pressure of the explosion.
 3
              Q
                     And do you know whether or not in 2002
     whether or not Kirk & Blum manufactured such a
 5
     product?
 6
                     To my knowledge, I wasn't employed by
 7
     Kirk & Blum in 2002, but when I dealt with that damper
 8
     design was later --
 9
                     Again, I am asking do you know --
                     Not in 2002.
10
              Α
11
              Q
                     Do you know whether or not --
                     I do not know in 2002 if they made a
12
              Α
13
     heavier damper.
14
                     Okay. Based on your review of the
15
     documents involving the purchase order for the parts
16
     from Kirk & Blum, was there a -- an order for a
     heavier gauge backblast damper than the one that was
17
     installed at Federal-Mogul?
18
19
              Α
                     To know what that description was
     versus what was furnished, I don't know.
20
21
                     Okay. Well, you said that you had
22
     reviewed the invoice or the purchase order, the
     documents of Kirk & Blum?
23
24
              Α
                     Yeah.
```

```
Page 135
 1
     it -- well, withdrawn.
 2
                     With respect to the hinge itself, okay,
 3
     do you have any information as to whether -- what the
 4
     condition of that hinge was prior to the explosion?
 5
                     Prior to the explosion, no. After the
 6
     explosion was on the ground, this picture shows it.
     Do you want to put this into evidence?
7
                     MR. BROWN: Yes.
8
 9
                     THE WITNESS: Exhibit?
10
11
                      (Deposition Exhibit Schloss 14 was
12
              marked and entered into the Record.)
13
14
     BY MR. MORRIS:
15
                     As part of your opinion, you stated
16
     that it is your opinion that a backblast damper of
     heavier construction should have been used in this
17
     system; is that correct?
18
19
                     There are backdraft dampers --
              Α
     backblast dampers that are commercially available that
20
     are heavier construction that will meet NFPA
21
22
     requirements.
23
                     When you refer to NFPA requirements,
              Q
24
     was there a requirement in 2002, a --
```

```
Page 134
 1
    materials that you previously reviewed. Were you able
 2
     to find any pictures that indicated that the backblast
 3
     damper remained in its position subsequent to the
 4
     explosion and the collapse of the bag house?
 5
                     From the pictures, the backdraft damper
 6
     was not still up in the air. But there is a picture
7
     of the backdraft damper on the ground, and it shows
8
     the same damage as the pictures we took during the
 9
     visit where you can see where the blade does not match
10
     up with the hole and that the side is ripped.
11
                     So I think if there was any mishandling
    between the time of the explosion and, quote, being in
12
     the dumpster, it would have shown up on those pictures
13
14
     there.
15
                     Well, my question is: Just from it
              Q
16
     falling to the ground --
17
                     By falling to the ground --
18
                     -- could that cause -- could that cause
     any damage to the backblast damper?
19
20
                     Not to the extent that the backdraft
              Α
21
     damper experienced.
22
                     Is there any indication that you have
     as to whether or not the condition of that backblast
23
24
     damper was different than it appears when you saw
```

```
Page 133
 1
     results of the explosion, and I don't think -- again,
 2
     in my opinion, that was not the result of mishandling
 3
     of that equipment. When it's in two or three pieces
 4
     and bent all up, that's not mishandling. That's a
     result of an explosion. That's based on my
 5
 6
     experience.
 7
                     Well, the location of the backblast
              Q
 8
     damper was approximately 20 feet above the ground?
 9
              Α
                     Yes.
10
                     Okay. And during the explosion, that
11
     ductwork all fell to the ground, correct?
                     I think part of that ductwork fell to
12
              Α
     the ground based on the pictures. Let me review.
13
14
                     MR. BROWN: Can I see the exhibits?
15
                     MR. MORRIS: Sure.
16
                     MR. BROWN: Take a minute. I want to
17
              make copies.
18
                     THE VIDEOGRAPHER: Off the Record.
19
20
                      (A recess was taken.)
21
22
     BY MR. MORRIS:
23
                     Mr. Schloss, you have had an
              Q
24
     opportunity to look through the pictures and the
```

Page 132 1 BY MR. MORRIS: 2 Q Okay. Now, the pictures that you are 3 referring to here were ones that you took you said in 4 August 2013 on your first visit to --5 Α Yes. 6 -- Federal-Mogul. And the backblast 7 damper at that time was kept in a dumpster, correct? 8 Α Yes. 9 Okay. And that was some two years and 10 nine months after the explosion occurred, correct? 11 Α Yes. Based on your examination of the 12 backblast damper in August of 2013, can you state with 13 a reasonable degree of engineering probability that 14 15 the condition of the backblast damper as you have described it was the result of the explosion compared 16 to any other possible causes for damage? 17 18 In my opinion without a doubt, what's shown in those pictures is indicative of what it 19 20 looked like during the explosion. Again, it wasn't 21 handled to the point of being able to rip the top off 22 of it or rip a blade out of the side of it. Those -my review of the information or of the backblast 23 24 damper at the time when I was there was looking at the

Page 131 1 I'm sorry, Number 4. Number 5 you can 2 see that it's offset and that the hinge -- the hinge 3 has released, and this is out of the way. You can see 4 the gaps around the blades. This is again -- Picture 5 Number 6 is a picture of the unit. 6 Do you want to hold it up for the 7 camera as you do that? 8 (Witness complies.) Picture Number 7 9 again shows the general construction of the damper and 10 the location of the blade. Picture Number 8 shows the 11 damper as well and where the side of the unit in this 12 case has become separated. 13 THE VIDEOGRAPHER: It didn't show that 14 well. 15 THE WITNESS: I'm sorry. Picture 16 Number 9 again shows the alignment of the 17 blade versus the hole. Picture Number 10 18 shows the blade itself and the alignment. 19 Picture Number 11 again is the blade with the 20 alignment, same as -- similar -- all these 21 pictures are just a little bit different 2.2 views. Picture Number 12. And Picture 23 Number 13 is the damper with the blade lifted up to show the condition of the seat on it. 24

```
Page 130
 1
                     And then you can refer to them by
              0
 2
     exhibit number.
 3
              Α
                     All right.
 5
                      (Deposition Exhibits Schloss 3 through
 6
              13 were marked and entered into the Record.)
 7
 8
     BY MR. MORRIS:
                     Mr. Schloss, back on the Record.
 9
10
     my last question, you indicated that you wanted to use
11
     some pictures in order to be able to discuss the
     backblast damper and specifically the condition of the
12
13
     hinge; is that correct?
14
              Α
                     Yes.
                     And we have now marked as Exhibits 3
15
              Q
16
     through 13 photographs that you took?
17
                     These are photographs that I took in
             That's the hinge in question. You can see
18
     that it's not intact. You can also see it in this
19
20
     one --
21
                     MR. BROWN: Say which one is this one.
22
     BY MR. MORRIS:
23
24
              Q
                     That's why we have numbers.
```

- 1 talking about putting a light piece of ductwork or
- 2 something to make an explosion panel out of a piece of
- 3 ductwork. That's not talking about that you can build
- 4 a flimsy dust collector and say, well, it blew apart
- 5 and that's how we kept the explosion.
- 6 Q Was the blowing of the side -- not the
- 7 flap, but the side blowing out on the backblast
- 8 damper, was that a means of ventilation for this fire
- 9 as well?
- 10 A Yeah. Whenever the pressure built up,
- it both tore the bag house apart and blew the
- 12 backdraft damper apart.
- 13 Q So it pushed out the side, but it did
- 14 not -- but that same pressure did not have the effect
- 15 of destroying the flap?
- 16 A It knocked the flap off the hinges at
- 17 one point in the --
- 18 O Where?
- 19 A Hinges were not fastened all the way
- 20 across the top of it. I think I have got a -- in this
- 21 group of pictures.
- 22 Q Let's do this: If there is pictures
- 23 you want to refer to, let's mark them first.
- 24 A Okay.

```
Page 128
 1
                     Well, I mean, those are my -- throw out
              Α
 2
     all the assumptions and change it to my professional
 3
     opinion is just --
 4
                     No, I understand. But to reach your
 5
     opinion, you made the assumption that, regardless of
 6
     whether or not the flap was propped open or closed,
7
     that the backblast damper allowed fire to pass into
     the ductwork beyond it and into the building?
 8
 9
              Α
                     Yeah.
10
                     That's your opinion?
              0
11
              Α
                     And even in quoting Doug Edwards, in
     his report I think it mentioned that it was better
12
     than having nothing there. Could have been a lot
13
14
     worse if nothing was there in that damper.
15
                     A little out of context, but yes.
              Q
16
              Α
                     Not really out of context, I don't
17
     think.
18
              0
                     Well, I will ask it -- I will go to a
     different area for that then too. Are you aware that
19
20
     NFPA 484, as it was at least in 2002, allows the use
21
     of lightweight construction as a deflagration device
22
     for aluminum dust systems?
23
              Α
                     As long as it doesn't impact -- as long
24
     as it doesn't impact the safety of the system.
```

```
Page 127
 1
    hinge wasn't a hundred percent intact. Whether that
 2
     was damaged during the explosion or handling or
 3
     whatever else, I don't know.
 4
                     Fair to say, though, the flap itself
 5
     was in -- was intact?
 6
                     It was intact. Whether it stopped the
7
     explosion, I could not guarantee that.
8
                     Well, based on your prior testimony of
 9
    how this works, that it's the pressure wave coming
10
     from the explosion before the fireball that would
11
     force that closed and that, in your opinion, that the
     dust pile wouldn't affect that ability because the
12
     pressure would be enough to force it closed --
13
14
              Α
                     I think --
15
                     -- anyway --
16
              Α
                     Yes, it would press it closed. Again,
    whether that's -- whether that pressure -- you
17
     wouldn't need much of a crack around that damper to
18
     allow it to go -- the fireball to go around it. When
19
     I looked at it, in my opinion, even if it did close,
20
     it didn't close to the point that it stopped the fire
21
22
     from going past that and down the ductwork.
23
              Q
                     Okay. Well, I hear a lot of
24
     assumptions in there, okay?
```

Page 126 1 question that will get a more direct answer, okay? 2 you think that the pile of dust and debris that was 3 present as described by Mr. Hodges hampered or reduced the operation of the backblast damper? 4 5 In my professional opinion, it didn't 6 hamper it. It didn't -- the pile of dust -- again, 7 you are talking about the pressure wave pushing a piece of quarter-inch plate against it. That --8 9 whether that would move it out of the way so that it 10 was a hundred percent sealed, I couldn't guarantee 11 that. If it didn't hamper it and it was 12 Q pressed completely closed as you have described -- we 13 14 know that it was blown out on the side, okay? -- then 15 what's your explanation for why the flap wasn't 16 damaged? 17 Again, the flap is made out of much heavier steel than what the casing is. The flap I 18 think is -- the gauge is 18 gauge, and I think the 19 20 blade was quarter-inch, so you are talking about quite a bit of difference in terms of what it was. 21 22 The hinge was torn at the top, wasn't 23 closing back against it and making that seal.

was when I did the inspection side of it, that the

24

```
1
     to take it and slam it shut prior to the fireball
 2
     getting there. Because what will happen is is the
 3
     pressure will go -- there will be some pressure that
 4
     went by it. You don't want fire going by it.
 5
                     In the construction in that unit, you
 6
     have two concerns. One is the strength of the blade
7
     to be able to stop against that, and the other is the
 8
     strength of the housing to be able to contain it while
 9
     it's doing it. The strength of the blade would be
10
     adequate to force the dust out of the way and get it
11
     to seep. I mean that it may -- it may seep 100
     percent. It may seep 95 percent. You know, the
12
     housing is what came ripping apart whether -- and, in
13
     my opinion, when the housing comes ripping apart, it
14
     also would allow additional fire to go past that
15
     backdraft damper just due to the stresses on the
16
17
     inside of the -- of the -- on the inside of the blade.
18
                     So to answer your question onto it is
     that the dust is in the -- in the damper and the --
19
20
     due to the size and the consistency of the dust, there
     is more than likely chance that it moved all that dust
21
22
     out of the way because you are talking about a force
     against it that's quite high to get that to seal.
23
24
              Q
                     So let's see if I can ask a more direct
```

Page 124 1 accumulation of dust and debris. Do you have an 2 opinion as to whether or not that affected the work of 3 that part during this explosion? 4 Α Rephrase it. 5 Sure, okay. At the time -- based on 6 your report, at the time that the explosion occurred 7 in the bag house, the flap of that damper was kept propped open by an accumulation of dust, correct? 8 9 That's the -- his observation, yeah, 10 and that was my -- that was my basis as well. 11 In that situation, okay, is it capable Q of closing completely in order to prevent that blast 12 from going into the ducts? 13 14 A backblast damper operates in two ways. First, you actually size it or install it in 15 16 the ductwork based on what the chemical characteristics of the dust is. 17 18 What you want to do is is when the explosion would take place in the dust collector, it's 19 going to take a certain amount of time for the 20 pressure wave to radiate out from the -- from the dust 21 22 The pressure wave's role is to take the collector. 23 damper blade and slam it shut. If it's open, I mean,

if the system is running or anything else like that,

24

Page 123 1 options that you have to pick from at that point. 2 Q With a backblast damper, is one of --3 one of the functions that that performs is to prevent 4 the flow back from the dust collection system into the 5 building when the system is not operating? 6 That's a -- that's a secondary use of 7 It just happens to work that way. But there are 8 backflow preventers that don't do that. 9 particular design gives you that function if it's not 10 in operation -- if it's not in operation as an 11 explosion device. But if you are selling it as a -if you buy a backflow preventer, you don't get a 12 backblast damper and the other way around. 13 14 Okay. In your -- in the designs of the 15 systems that you have done, have you used both a 16 backblast damper and a backflow damper? 17 I have used backdraft dampers on 18

systems that are not combustible dust, and I have used

19 backblast dampers on systems that are combustible

20 dust, but not the -- not to the design that's there

would I use it for a backblast damper. 21

22 And in -- in this particular case,

23 okay, you have indicated that Mr. Hodges has said that

24 the flap for the damper was kept open by the 1756 Schloss (Morris)

```
Page 122
 1
     understand. You referred to two different
 2
     descriptions here, backflow damper and a backblast
 3
     damper. And you have mentioned NFPA --
 4
              Α
                     Yep.
 5
                     -- as designating those two two
 6
     different things.
7
              Α
                     To say that -- if you look, probably,
8
     in the ASHRAE handbook, it probably talks about
 9
    backdraft dampers. It probably doesn't talk about
10
    backblast dampers because they don't deal with
11
     explosions.
12
                     But it is a industry-accepted term that
     if you look at it and you are saying you are buying a
13
    backdraft damper, the expectation is it's going to
14
15
     stop the draft of air once the system is down. It's
16
     not going to stop the explosion.
                     Is there any other term that is used
17
     for an explosion isolation damper?
18
19
              Α
                     Well, there is different -- there is
    passive flame front arresters. There is different
20
21
    NFPA names for it, but the function is still the same,
22
     to stop that blast from going backwards. They are not
23
     all designed like with a flap into it. It could be
24
     change of direction. There is a lot of different
```

Page 121 1 some shape or form. 2 Is that an industry definition, or 3 where does that come from? 4 Α That's more of a -- from my experience 5 side of it, there is a industry definition on a 6 backblast damper or a backflow preventer. There are 7 requirements at NFPA 69 for what those need to be and 8 what pressures they need to withstand. 9 Well, again, in determining -- you are 10 putting forth that that's the purpose of a backblast damper? 11 12 Α Yes. Is there a specific industry standard 13 14 or definition that you can refer to for that description? 15 16 If you look at NFPA, 69 is going to talk about a backflow -- you know, backblast damper or 17 backblast preventer. 18 19 I'm sorry. NFPA distinguishes between backblast damper and backflow damper? 20 21 Well, in the backflow -- in NFPA, the 22 backflow damper really -- or backflow damper isn't going to provide you the protection that you need. 23 24 And, again, I am just trying to Q

- 1 based on that you have denser colder air on the 2 outside of it, less dense air on the inside of it, and 3 it's going to find equilibrium. So there are two 4 different types of devices. One is a backflow 5 preventer. The one is a backblast preventer. 6 In 2002 was that a distinguishing 7 description of those parts? 8 In my -- in my view and my expectations 9 as a designer, of an engineer of those systems, I would know the differentiation between those two 10 11 systems. Okay. So if someone orders a backblast 12 Q 13 damper, okay, from a catalog --14 Α It better -- if they are advertising it 15 as a backblast damper, then it better meet the
- components of the dust collection system need to be capable of withstanding that explosive pressure.

 20 Q In your report, there is a couple -21 couple places where you define the purpose of a backblast damper as a device to prevent an explosion

explosion that's inside that dust collector. All the

requirements that are required to withstand a

from propagating through dust; is that correct?

16

17

24 A That could -- I am sure it says that in

- 1 into the plant. Imagine that the fireball is like a
- 2 big balloon. Anyplace that you put a hole in that
- 3 balloon, you are going to get equal flow out of. It's
- 4 looking for the least -- it's looking for the easiest
- 5 way out. If you build a enclosure that can withstand
- 6 the explosive forces without any problem and don't do
- 7 it and don't put anything on the inlet, that fireball
- 8 and all those gasses is going back into your process
- 9 where it's going to pick up fresh fuel. You are going
- 10 to have secondary explosions and, in this case, a
- 11 tragic incident.
- 12 Q Now, in this particular case, one of
- 13 the parts that we are referring to is my clients'
- 14 backblast damper. Within the ventilation field, okay,
- 15 what does blast mean?
- A Blast means that it's going to stop a
- 17 blast.
- 18 Q And does it distinguish between what
- 19 that is a blast, whether it's a blast of air or an
- 20 explosion? Is there a difference?
- 21 A A blast -- it could be the pressure
- 22 wave ahead of the blast. The difference is a backflow
- 23 preventer is something that closes when the fan shuts
- 24 off to prevent air from going back into the building

```
1
                     Okay. Well, would you agree that the
              0
 2
     requirement to use the NFPA 69 standards is explicit
 3
     for powder plants, but not mentioned in the sections
 4
     regarding processing and finishing of aluminum?
 5
                     It's incorporated into all parts of
 6
     that chapter. Powder plants have specific things that
7
     are in addition to the aluminum standard.
8
    because you have aluminum -- just because you have a
 9
     combustible dust, it requires that you have explosion
10
    protection for it. Whether it's spelled out and says
11
     if the combustible dust looks like this and is painted
     this color, you don't have to have explosion
12
    protection, if it's combustible, you have to have
13
14
     explosion protection.
15
                     And in the system at Federal-Mogul, the
16
    bag house was part of that explosion --
17
                     The bag house -- the bag house -- the
     entire system is going to be explosion protection.
18
     You would have to have explosion protection because
19
     it's a combustible dust, which the explosion proved
20
     that it was a combustible dust. That you would have
21
22
     to have a explosion protection on the bag house.
     would have to have inlet isolation. The inlet
23
24
     isolation keeps that fireball from going backwards
```

- 1 with aluminum. Some are specific to aluminum powder,
- 2 but the rest of the chapter is specific to aluminum
- 3 dust. The requirements and the safety requirements or
- 4 explosion protection requirements don't change just
- 5 because it's not aluminum powder.
- 6 Q In 2002-2003 when this system was being
- 7 installed, was an explosion isolation device required
- 8 by the codes or standards that were in place at that
- 9 time?
- 10 A Yes.
- 11 Q And, specifically, what code or
- 12 standard was applicable to this system?
- 13 A 484, 68, 69. And if you look in the
- 14 beginning of any of the NFPA codes, they incorporate
- 15 by reference every other standard that they write.
- 16 Q And is -- NFPA 69 in the code
- 17 applicable at that time, was that explicit as to 484
- 18 for powder plants?
- 19 A 69 -- NFPA 69 was for explosion
- 20 protection systems. NFPA 484 required that you
- 21 provide explosion protection for equipment that's
- 22 handling aluminum dust. Whether it's powder or if
- 23 it's machined aluminum, anything that's combustible
- 24 aluminum falls under that section.

```
Page 116
 1
     explosive. It's awful hard to get ten of those up
 2
     into the air and get them to explode. You grind it
 3
     down into hundred micron parts or into a combustible
 4
     dust side of it, it's extremely combustible.
 5
                     MR. MORRIS: Just so our record is
 6
              complete, if we can mark that as Schloss 2.
 7
 8
                      (Deposition Exhibit Schloss 2 was
 9
              marked and entered into the Record.)
10
11
                     THE WITNESS: Again, that's why the
12
              chemical characteristics of the dust is
13
              important to have in making that
14
              determination.
15
16
     BY MR. MORRIS:
                     And where I was going with that
17
     question is that, in terms of the requirements, in
18
     particular, for explosion isolations or explosion
19
20
     containment equipment, NFPA distinguishes between an
     aluminum powder plant and other plants that have
21
22
     aluminum as a byproduct, correct?
                           There is a section -- in 484
23
              Α
                     Yes.
24
     there is a chapter that handles aluminum, that deals
```

Page 115 1 I haven't -- I have an example on the end of my 2 finger of how powdery the -- small the dust was. 3 Again, this was on a different machine that's 4 representative of the type of dust that's onto it. you want to add it as an exhibit? But that was -- the 5 6 dust that was being captured off of the steel brushers 7 was that. 8 MR. HARBERT: Can we show that to the 9 camera? 10 MR. HUDGINS: Somebody just voted in 11 Afghanistan. 12 THE WITNESS: That's it. They got a 13 purple thumb or whatever they got. 14 15 BY MR MORRIS: 16 And based on that observation, you extrapolated from that that the dust created on the 17 aluminum line was similar? 18 From that and looking at the dust that 19 Α was inside the piping. A lot of it was caked up due 20 to the moisture, but you could find fine particulate 21 22 down in there, down in the material that was inside the ductwork as well. So -- but, again, aluminum 23 24 could be explosive. You know, that aluminum can isn't

- times the diameter of a human hair, extremely small.

 At one time NFPA stopped at that point saying it was

 over 500 microns. Now they changed the definition so

 that it says anything that's got a high surface area

 versus mass. The hundred microns is -- below a
- 7 combustion testing, to get out the fine particles, and
- 8 it's tested at 75 microns and below. The dust

hundred microns is where they do the testing,

- 9 collector is a wonderful product classifier in that
- 10 the really fine dust ends up on the bags. It ends up
- 11 not falling down into the dust collector. If the
- 12 heavier particles that are greater than 100 microns or
- 13 150 or 200 microns probably fall into the -- well,
- 14 will fall into the hopper by themselves. The fine
- 15 dust has got to glomerate on the bags until it's large
- 16 enough and weighs enough that it will fall down
- 17 through the air stream.

6

- 18 So by knowing the chemical
- 19 characteristics and the particle distribution of the
- 20 dust that's there determines how combustible it is.
- 21 When we were doing the site visit, I
- looked at the same piece of equipment, but handling
- 23 steel. And -- I may have taken a picture of that. I
- 24 am not sure if I did. But the -- the dust was very

Page 113 1 an aluminum powder-producing plant? 2 Α Aluminum powder is where they take 3 aluminum, melt it down, atomize it into a fine 4 particulate probably with the consistency of baby 5 powder, and it is extremely explosive and extremely 6 susceptible to exothermic reactions. 7 0 That's not what we had here, correct? 8 Α No. But if you look at the type of 9 dust is aluminum powder is a separate issue and is 10 handled in NFPA 484 as a separate section of aluminum. 11 It has specific requirements just for aluminum powder because it does have such a chance of having 12 exothermic reaction. But in the dust that was in the 13 dust collector, it's still aluminum. The thing that 14 15 makes a dust particle explosive or having a better 16 chance of being explosive is the size of the particle. So what you want is a particle that has a low mass, 17 but yet high surface area. At one time NFPA said less 18 19 than 500 microns, human hairs, a hundred microns, so 20 you are talking about stuff that's pretty small. 21 The width of a dime? 0 No, not close. 2.2 Α 23 Less than that? Q 24 Α Human hair is a hundred to five No.

```
Page 112
 1
     melt to have certain characteristics.
 2
                     Is there a -- is there a difference in
 3
     the ventilation system that you would have for an
 4
     aluminum powder plant versus a plant that has aluminum
 5
     dust as a byproduct of the manufacturing system?
 6
                     Do you know what a -- let me ask you
 7
     this: Do you know what an aluminum powder plant is or
 8
     the difference between aluminum powder and aluminum?
 9
                     Aluminum powder, as I understand it, is
10
     produced for use in explosives --
11
                     THE VIDEOGRAPHER: Off the Record,
12
              please. We got a breakdown, got a technical
13
              difficulty here.
14
                      (Discussion off the Record.)
15
16
17
                     MR. MORRIS: If the court reporter can
18
              read back where we were.
19
20
                      (The court reporter read the requested
21
              portion of the record.)
22
     BY MR. MORRIS:
23
24
                     Mr. Schloss, can you tell us, what is
              Q
```

Page 111 1 involved on the fourth time it burned down. I didn't 2 investigate the first three times. It was just after 3 the fourth one. And I know they had had it tested 4 each time between it. And, again, each one of those 5 was a fire that was in the bag house that originated 6 in the bag house by exothermic reactions. 7 Q Okay. And in that case were you able to determine the length of time that the exothermic 8 9 reaction had been ongoing? 10 Α No. And, again, by the time I was No. 11 involved into it, they had already switched out -they actually had two bag houses, so they could switch 12 them out fast enough when they burn them down. 13 one that had actually burnt down was already being 14 15 repaired and refurbished and brought back to the site. And then -- and that aluminum dust, was 16 Q that at a aluminum powder-producing plant or --17 18 No. Α 19 It was a byproduct of another --20 Α No. It was aluminum and the process roll forms of steel sheath around metal dust, 21 22 aluminum. It could be aluminum, it could be steel, it 23 could be copper that's used in the steel industry to

fine-tune their electric arc furnaces to get the batch

24

```
Page 110
 1
              Α
                     Yes.
 2
              Q
                     How many times?
 3
              Α
                     Once in explosions and probably four or
     five that had pulses that we talked about before where
 4
 5
     they had minor explosions that didn't cause any
 6
     structural damage or use the -- and I have also
7
     designed and been the design engineer on systems that
 8
     didn't explode for combust -- for metals in bag
 9
     houses.
10
                     Now, in your --
              0
11
              Α
                     So far I have got it right every time.
                     So, with respect to the one explosion
12
              Q
     that you were part of that investigation, your role in
13
     that is not as a explosion cause and origin expert, is
14
     it?
15
16
              Α
                     My expertise is in combustible dust
     side of it, yes. If you want your house fire
17
     investigated, no.
18
19
                     All right. With respect to that
              Q
20
     explosion, were you able to test the dust that was
21
     involved in that explosion?
22
                     We had -- we had the dust tested prior
23
     to it, and it was dust coming off of a process, so it
24
     was repeatable. And after -- after the -- I got
```

1 that's actually doing the process. 2 Well, and I guess the question I go to 3 here is: With respect to facts that you are working 4 with, again, observation of Mr. Hodges and your 5 interpretation of the video, those are the two facts 6 you rely on? 7 And experience. 8 I understand based on that, but if we 9 take those out, just as a hypothetical, if you do not 10 have the video, okay, and you don't have a direct 11 observation from Mr. Hodges, okay, based on your experience, can you still come to the same conclusion? 12 It would still -- exothermic reaction 13 would be something that I would investigate as part of 14 15 that and would be a cause of it the same way I did it here where I determined it was two causes, or two 16 possible causes, one in the ductwork, one in the dust 17 collector, and use the eyewitness report and the video 18 to decide where the origin was. 19 20 Q Okay. Now, based -- you keep referring 21 to your experience, so I guess two questions come to 22 mind for me, is, one, have you investigated aluminum dust ventilation systems for explosions in bag houses 23

24

before this one?

Page 108 1 large amounts of dust. 2 Q Okay. So is it fair to say that the 3 principal basis for your opinion that it was an 4 exothermic reaction that ignited aluminum dust 5 particles in the bag house is, one, the witness 6 statement of Mr. Hodges that he saw the explosion 7 beyond the damper and, two, your interpretation of the video? 8 9 And my knowledge of dust collectors and 10 collecting dust -- collecting metal dust in dust collectors. 11 I understand it's your training and 12 Q experience. 13 14 Α That's my training and experience. But in order to come to that 15 Q 16 conclusion, you needed -- you need certain facts before you? 17 18 I need certain facts, and that's when you asked before about the dust characteristics. 19 20 Would that have been helpful? That would have been 21 helpful. Again, what you are looking at is you could 22 have two processes similar in two different plants and have two different dust characteristics based on the 23

type of machine or the manufacturer of the machine

24

Page 107 1 them for 30 years, I do know how they work. I do know 2 how they clean. 3 And between those two things is is you 4 are always going to have dust in a dust collector 5 unless you go in and change the bags, wash it down, 6 you know, remove any waste barrels, anything that's 7 there. You are going to have dust that's capable of 8 being dislodged and coming down through the material. 9 Okay. And, again, having to go back to 10 the -- I am not sure. Maybe you told me, maybe you 11 didn't, but what's the temperature that you would have 12 to get from the exothermic reaction that would ignite the dust? 13 14 There is a minimum -- there is a 15 minimum ignition energy for aluminum dust that would 16 also be run at the same time when they are doing the dust characteristics. It's called MI, and that's how 17 much energy would have to be available to ignite a 18 combustible dust cloud. If that information was 19 20 available from the dust that's there, I can calculate and tell you how much it is. 21 22 We don't have that. 0 23 Α You don't have that. So what you are 24 looking at is the ability for a dust collector to drop

1 in the air sufficient to fuel the explosion? 2 Because they bought a dust collector 3 that for a aluminum dust -- for aluminum dust. 4 inside the aluminum dust is going to be -- inside the 5 dust collector is going to be aluminum dust. 6 collectors not only produce a combustible dust cloud 7 during a pulse. They can also do it from dust falling 8 off of the bags, dust coming -- falling off of the side of the dust collector in a sheet coming down 9 10 through it. All it takes is the interaction between 11 the glowing embers or the glowing heat and the dust. The whole dust collector doesn't need to be full. 12 what happened in a case where the whole dust collector 13 wasn't full, you could end up with a smaller poof, 14 which then broke more of it loose, and you would 15 16 theoretically have a secondary explosion inside the dust collector that tore it apart. 17 18 Okay. And, again, I am just trying to find out how you came to the conclusion that there 19 was, one, a sufficient exothermic reaction that got to 20 a temperature that could ignite a sufficient --21 You have aluminum dust. You have 22 Α 23 water. You are going to have exothermic reaction. 24 You have a dust collector. And after working with

- 1 the match far enough away from it that you are outside
- 2 that vapor level, it's not going to burn either. Now,
- 3 if you get it just right and you get it between the
- 4 lower flammable limit and the upper flammable limit,
- 5 then you have just made a mess and had a large
- 6 explosion and fire of gasoline.
- 7 So, in terms of vapors, you look at
- 8 those two things. You could have an environment
- 9 that's a hundred percent nitrogen -- or a hundred
- 10 percent hydrogen and you can't explode it.
- 11 Q Okay.
- 12 A You can have one that's 2 percent
- 13 nitrogen and not explode it. But in terms of metals
- 14 and metal dust or any type of dust, there is a minimum
- 15 explosive concentration, which means how much dust is
- 16 suspended in the air at that point. And it's usually
- in grams per cubic meter.
- But they don't give you an upper level
- 19 because it's -- it's not -- by the time you reach that
- 20 upper level, you are at dense phase material handling
- 21 where you are moving a slug through a pipe.
- 22 Q And in this case, though, what
- 23 assumptions did you have to make in order to come to
- 24 the conclusion that there was aluminum dust particles

Page 104 1 hydrogen? 2 I would think hydrogen probably explodes at a lower level. But without looking it up, 3 4 I mean, that's just an assumption. 5 Okay. And do you have an opinion as to 6 whether or not there was hydrogen present in the bag house at the time of this explosion? 7 8 Α There would have been hydrogen present 9 if you had a exothermic reaction, but the hydrogen 10 present I didn't account for. I assumed it would be 11 less than the lower explosive limit of hydrogen, which I think is around 4 percent. 12 Okay. And what -- what's the -- well, 13 14 what's the critical mass for aluminum dust? If you say it's 4 percent for --15 16 Α Well, the minimum explosive 17 concentration --18 All right. 19 Α -- is a difference between when you are 20 talking about a gas and when you are talking about a If you take gasoline, you take a 1-gallon can 21 22 of gasoline, if you could get the match down into the gasoline without going through the vapor barrier, it 23 24 wouldn't burn because there is no oxygen. If you get

```
1
     a hydrogen explosion inside the dust collector.
 2
     was -- I based my opinion that it was on the
 3
     exothermic reaction generating heat. The gas would
 4
     have been lighter than air and would have floated off
 5
     away from the surface, so it would have been diluted
 6
     into it and would have been at a level that you
7
     wouldn't have had a hydrogen explosion in it. If you
 8
     seal up that dust collector and seal everything, you
 9
     can end up with that. I have been in a plant that had
10
     aluminum -- 55 gallon of aluminum fine similar to
11
     this; put it outside; the next morning they came in.,
     The 55-gallon drum was round in that the top and the
12
     bottom were bulged out. The seal was -- the clamp was
13
     on so tight that it held the hydrogen inside -- inside
14
15
     the dust collector -- or inside the 55-gallon drum at
16
     the same time. But I didn't base any of these
     assumptions on that the hydrogen exploded. If it did,
17
     that would have just been something else, but --
18
19
                     Additional fuel along with the aluminum
              Q
20
     dust?
21
                     That would have been additional fuel
              Α
22
     along with the aluminum dust.
23
                     Is the combustion temperature for
              Q
24
     suspended aluminum dust different than that for
```

```
Page 102
     you can have the exothermic reaction. So there is a
 1
 2
     heat generation of some type, and it also creates a
     byproduct of hydrogen gas; is that correct?
 3
 4
              Α
                     Yes.
 5
              0
                     And hydrogen gas is combustible?
 6
                     Very combustible.
 7
                     Okay. And what temperature does
 8
     hydrogen gas combust at?
 9
              Α
                     I can look it up in the documents.
                     MR. HUDGINS: That's without an
10
11
              external source of ignition?
12
                     THE WITNESS: That's without -- I can
13
              go look. I can look it up in reference data,
              but I don't have it available to me here.
14
15
16
     BY MR. MORRIS:
                     Well, in reviewing this matter, did you
17
     make a determination?
18
19
              Α
                     No, but I didn't look at the hydrogen
     gas as being part of that issue.
20
21
                     Would hydrogen be a fuel for an
22
     explosion of this type?
23
              Α
                     Hydrogen gas would be a fuel for that
24
     explosion, but I didn't base my opinion on that it was
```

```
Page 101
 1
     reaction would have to be ongoing for it to get to the
 2
     temperature that would ignite the fuel?
 3
              Α
                     Without knowing -- without the chemical
 4
     characteristics of the dust, no.
 5
              Q
                     Okay.
 6
                     It would be a quess.
 7
              Q
                     And fair to say that whatever that rate
 8
     may be, it would be affected by the temperature inside
 9
     the --
10
                     Affected by the temperature and the
11
     humidity inside the space. The reaction -- the water
     vapor could have got out there two days before.
12
     could have got out there two minutes before, you know.
13
     I don't --
14
15
              0
                     So two minutes would be a sufficient
16
     time --
17
              Α
                     No.
18
                     -- for it to occur?
              0
19
                     Two minutes -- I don't know, because
              Α
20
     without the chemical characteristics, you wouldn't be
     able to calculate it.
21
22
                     Now, you are free always to correct me
23
     when I am wrong. But I understand that when you have
24
     this reaction between water and aluminum dust, that
```

Page 100 1 delicate they can't run if its raining outside without 2 catching the bag house on fire, which they did four 3 times in less than a year and blew it up twice. 4 Q So, in this case, is it your conclusion 5 that the exothermic reaction is the source of ignition based on the occurrence of the event itself? 6 7 Α Rephrase it. Well, the explosion occurred. 8 9 Α (Witness nods.) 10 And you have indicated that essentially 11 you eliminated all possible sources of ignition first down to the static electricity charge and an 12 exothermic reaction? 13 14 Yes. And looking at it between whether 15 the explosion originated outside the plant or inside 16 the plant, by originating on the outside, it disregarded the static that was generated inside the 17 plant and looked at on the outside of the plant what 18 19 was causing that. 20 Okay. So now having reached that -- or Q either eliminating static electricity as the source of 21 ignition and now reaching the exothermic reaction as 22 23 the likely cause, is there any calculation that you 24 can make that would say how long the exothermic

Page 99 1 Again, we talked about that before. 2 That was provided that it was -- that the system and 3 the plant were operating up to between a half hour and 4 an hour and a half before the accident. 5 And when you say the system, you are 6 referring to the --7 Α Dust collection system and the wet dust collectors. 8 9 Okay. So, now, with respect to the 10 condensation that you testified that would occur in 11 the bag house over -- basically, since it became operational, is there -- what is the rate of reaction 12 for that condensation or the water and its interaction 13 with the aluminum dust that would lead to an 14 exothermic reaction? 15 16 Α Well, for that specific dust, again, without the dust characteristics, what was in there at 17 that time, it would be very difficult to determine 18 That's why if you had testing that showed what 19 20 the dust characteristics were, you could calculate 21 that. 22 I do work in a plant that handles --23 that part of their manufacturing is aluminum as well

as steel, magnesium. And their systems are so

24

Page 98 1 monitoring system or something that would go back that 2 far and monitor those conditions, no. 3 Q Okay. And as a result of not having 4 any physical evidence to determine that, is there any 5 assumption that you made with respect to the dew point for the interior air of Federal-Mogul? 6 7 Α My analysis was that it was going to be 8 higher than what the outside dew point was. 9 degrees is pretty low in terms of a dew point. 10 having people in occupied space with forklifts, people 11 moving around, it's going to be higher than that. Typically, in a manufacturing plant that's not even 12 humidified, you are at 45 to 50 percent relative 13 14 humidity. 15 Do you know how many people were in the Q 16 plant that day? 17 Α No. 18 Do you know how many -- what part of their operations were ongoing on that day? 19 20 I was told the plant was in operation Α 21 at that point. I would assume there was people in the 22 plant. 23 Okay. And where did you get that Q

24

information from?

```
Page 97
 1
              0
                     I don't.
                              I don't. Going back to your
 2
     testimony relating to the exothermic reaction as your
 3
     conclusion as the source of ignition in this case,
 4
     what was the dew point at -- for Blacksburg on
     December 31, 2010?
 5
 6
                     I have got the weather information for
            Thursday, December 2010, what time? What time
 7
8
     of day would you like to pick?
 9
                     I would assume at or about the time of
10
     the explosion. So that's what, around 10 a.m.?
11
              Α
                     At 10 a.m. the dew point was 28.4
12
     degrees.
                     What was the outside temperature at
13
              Q
14
     that time?
                     32.
15
              Α
16
                     How is that significant?
              Q
17
                     It's cold outside.
              Α
18
                     Do you know what the -- what the dew
     point was for the interior of the Federal-Mogul plant
19
20
     on that date?
21
                          That's not been provided.
              Α
22
                     And is there any way at this point in
              Q
     time that that could be determined?
23
24
              Α
                     Unless Federal-Mogul had a building
```

```
Page 96
 1
              Α
                     He is a good engineer.
 2
              Q
                     Are you familiar with his reputation in
 3
     the industry?
 4
              Α
                     He is, again, a good engineer.
 5
              0
                     And did you read the report from
 6
     Richard Roby?
7
                     Yes. I reviewed it as well.
              Α
 8
                     Do you know Richard Roby?
 9
              Α
                     No.
10
                     Are you aware that he is a member of
     the committee for NFPA 921?
11
                     No, but I also know other members of
12
              Α
     the committee.
                     That may not make them an expert in
13
14
     anything more than being on the committee.
15
                     Absolutely. I just didn't know --
16
                     I don't really think that buys you much
     credentials on that.
17
18
                     So can you explain to me, what is
     confirmational bias?
19
20
                     I am not familiar with the term.
              Α
                                                         Ι
     know it's in 921 in the definitions. I know there is
21
22
     a section on confirmational bias, but to sit here and
     quote it -- if you want to get out 921, I can show you
23
24
     where it is and tell you what it says.
```

Page 95 1 overall argument what they were arguing, and I still 2 feel that my interpretation is accurate. 3 Q Okay. So maybe I can ask it this way: Are the conclusions of the defense experts that you 4 5 have reviewed wrong or just a difference of opinion 6 based on different interpretations of the same data? 7 Α Given those two choices, I would say 8 difference of opinion on what their data. 9 Okay. 10 I think mine is right, and I don't 11 quite agree with theirs, but that's their prerogative to come up with it. 12 Fair enough. And within your field, 13 that's not unusual that there are differences of 14 opinion? 15 16 Α Differences of opinion that engineers have from time to time. 17 I know you mentioned earlier that you 18 had worked with Doug Edwards previously at Kb/Tech. 19 And so, generally, are you familiar with the work that 20 21 he has done in the ventilation system industry? 22 Yes. It's similar to what I do. Α

And do you have any opinion as to his

23

24

Q

credentials within the industry?

Page 94 1 Α That didn't change my mind. Also, part 2 of the investigation I had was to be able to go up in 3 a scissors lift to that camera to get a better view of 4 what was there, looking at both out that door as well as the ductwork and where the -- where the system was 5 installed. 6 7 So, using those two things, I still 8 think that my original -- or my conclusions are still 9 based on the original side of it where the initial 10 explosion took place outdoors. 11 And I understand your opinion. What I Q am asking is: In having reviewed that and gone 12 through the methodology that was used by those 13 experts, was there anything in those opinions that you 14 15 read that you felt to be done contrary to scientific 16 methodology as -- before the NFPA 921? 17 If there is a part of it that you want to ask about, if there is a section, I will review 18 that section of the report. Again, I just looked at 19 the overall side of it, not each detailed... 20 21 So you can't speak to the details in 22 that report as to whether or not you evaluated each of those details as it --23

I looked at in the overall -- in their

24

Α

Page 93 1 at what their major conclusions were. Maybe not all 2 of the science behind it, but what the major 3 conclusions were. 4 0 Okay. And specifically with respect to 5 the video evidence, did you read any of the information that came to different conclusions as to 6 7 what the video evidence showed in this case? 8 Α I read that. I still stand by my conclusions of the video. 9 10 Did you discount it? Was it a 11 reasonable interpretation of the video, or was it unreasonable? 12 It was somebody's interpretation of the 13 It wasn't what I saw in the video. 14 15 Q Well, what I am asking is: Was --16 based on your experience and in your opinion to a reasonable degree of engineering probability, were --17 was the opinions expressed with respect to the video 18 evidence in any way scientifically unreliable, in your 19 opinion? 20 21 I looked at what their opinions of the 22 video were and their arguments on the video, and my original opinions on the video still stand. 23 24 Fair to say that within your field --Q

```
Page 92
 1
     explosion at its inception, was there any other
 2.
     witness?
 3
              Α
                     That's the only one that I saw.
 4
              Q
                     Since you have completed your report
 5
     and your conclusions, have you been provided with the
 6
     reports from the experts that have been retained by
 7
     the defendants in this case?
 8
              Α
                     Yes.
 9
                     And have you had an opportunity to
10
     review all of those reports?
11
              Α
                     I did a quick review, not a detailed
     review.
12
                     As part of the scientific methodology
13
              Q
     as outlined in NFPA, when you are presented with
14
     additional facts or other hypotheses, is there a
15
16
     requirement to go back and reevaluate and retest your
     own hypothesis?
17
                     Yes. I look at what their opinions
18
     were and go back and look at what my evaluation was,
19
20
     what...
                     And based on your answer, you said, I
21
              0
22
     have looked at them briefly. Have you had the
     opportunity to do that yet?
23
24
              Α
                     Looked at them briefly, enough to look
```

```
Page 91
 1
     investigation as to what the cause was for the damper
 2
     flap to be open such that Mr. Hodges could see past
 3
     it?
 4
              Α
                     Based on the testimony, there was three
 5
     to five inches of dust in the bottom of the ductwork.
 6
     My conclusion was that the dust was holding the damper
 7
     open. I do need to take a break, so --
                     Okay. Off the Record. Sure.
 8
              Q
 9
                     THE VIDEOGRAPHER: Off the Record.
10
11
                      (A recess was taken.)
12
13
     BY MR. MORRIS:
14
                     Mr. Schloss, we are back after a short
15
     break, and I guess we were finishing up -- we were
16
     still talking about the witness statement of
17
     Mr. Hodges.
18
                     So other than Mr. Hodges' statement
     regarding his observation of the explosion, are there
19
     any other witness statements that you reviewed
20
     regarding the explosion?
21
22
                     Other -- the ones I gave you as the
23
     depositions, I reviewed all of those.
24
                     Well, specific to actually seeing the
              Q
```

Page 90 1 damper, that you found to be contrary to the 2 information that you had from your investigation? 3 Α Not that I recall at this point. 4 Q Okay. With respect to the backblast 5 damper and him being able to see beyond it, do you 6 know what the reason was that he was able to see 7 beyond the damper? 8 Α The reason --9 Well, withdrawn. Let me set that up 10 differently. You indicated that the -- the system was 11 not operating, correct? 12 Uh-huh. Α Okay. When the system is operating and 13 14 there is airflow going to the bag house, then the flap of the damper would be pushed open, correct? 15 16 Α Yes. When that system is not operating, it 17 would be closed? 18 It -- the design of it would be closed. 19 Α Whether it was closed -- there could have been buildup 20 21 of material, could have been just the damper was bound 22 against the side of it. Be hard to speculate on that. Based on the information that -- well, 23 Q 24 did you make a determination as part of your

```
Page 89
 1
     BY MR. MORRIS:
 2
              Q
                     All right. With respect to Mr. Hodges,
 3
     do you know whether or not he had any prior experience
     in cleaning out ventilation systems?
 4
 5
                     I have no work records on what he has
 6
     done other than in his statement he said, before when
7
     they have had sparking, they have turned the RPM down
 8
     on the truck, so I assume that he did have experience
 9
     in that.
10
              0
                     And --
11
                                Excuse me, you are losing
                     MR. BROWN:
12
              your microphone there. You may want to
13
              adjust it.
14
15
     BY MR. MORRIS:
16
                     And, again, did you interview
              Q
     Mr. Hodges to find out --
17
                     No. I -- I took his -- read his
18
     deposition, but had no personal contact with
19
20
     Mr. Hodges.
21
                     Okay. Was there anything else in his
22
     deposition or -- withdrawn. Was there anything in his
     deposition in terms of his testimony of his
23
24
     observations, other than his description of the
```

Page 88 1 As an engineer that deals in this all 2 the time, I'd understand what I was looking at. 3 layman looking down a duct with a flashlight, I am not 4 a hundred percent sure I would know what a backdraft 5 damper or a backblast damper is going to look like. 6 I'd know what a fireball looks like, but anything that 7 was in the ductwork at that point I wouldn't --8 Q Do you think --9 MR. BROWN: Let him finish. 10 11 BY MR. MORRIS: I am going to ask you going forward, 12 Q although some of my questions may seem open-ended 13 sometimes, they are asking for a very specific 14 15 response. And to the extent that I can, I want you to 16 -- or that you can, please confine the answer specifically to the question, and we will move along a 17 little bit quicker. 18 19 Α Okay. 20 MR. BROWN: You can answer -- let me 21 respond to that. You can fully answer any 2.2 question that he asks in the way that you 23 believe fully answers that question. 24

```
Page 87
 1
     particular, eyewitness statements, correct?
 2
              Α
                     Yes.
 3
              Q
                      Okay. And one of the ways that you do
 4
     that is to evaluate each of the statements that that
 5
     witness has made about the events, correct?
 6
              Α
                     Yes.
 7
                      In this case Mr. Hodges' testimony that
              Q
     he could see past the damper through the top, okay,
 8
 9
     would you agree or disagree that that is incorrect
10
     based on the configuration of the damper?
11
              Α
                     His description does not match the
     description of how the damper is actually built. What
12
     he was describing there, I am not real sure of what
13
14
     his interpretation of the top and looking over it.
15
     could have been looking at the buildup of aluminum
16
     that was in the bottom of the ductwork. So it would
     be hard to -- without getting a diagram or something
17
     from Mr. Hodges, it would be hard to test that
18
19
     statement.
20
                     And did you do that?
              Q
21
              Α
                     No.
2.2
                     Okay. So --
              Q
                     I mean --
23
              Α
24
              Q
                     Okay.
```

```
Page 86
 1
              prejudiced.
 2
                     MR. ALEXANDER: You are right.
 3
              you.
 4
                     MR. HUDGINS: Without belaboring the
 5
              whole thing, I think everybody on this side
 6
              of the table would disagree that his
 7
              questions are misleading in any respect. And
              the witness who has indicated that he
 8
 9
              reviewed the record is in a position to agree
10
              or disagree with the foundation for his
11
              opinion.
12
                     MR. BROWN: I hear you. I made my
13
              objection. Unless you want to continue to
14
              make the argument, then why don't we move on.
                     MR. HUDGINS: That's all.
15
16
                     THE VIDEOGRAPHER: Off the Record.
17
18
                      (Discussion off the Record.)
19
20
     BY MR. MORRIS:
21
                     Mr. Schloss, thank you for your
     patience. Again, now, referring back to Chapter 17 in
22
23
     NFPA 921, one of the obligations that you have as an
24
     investigator is to test witness statements and, in
```

,		Page	85
1	know.		
2	So that is what my that's what my		
3	objection is, is that when you characterize		
4	it, you are characterizing him saying that		
5	this is the way it is. That is not an		
6	accurate characterization. With that, then		
7	you can go ahead and ask your questions. I		
8	just didn't want to do that in front of the		
9	witness.		
10	MR. MORRIS: I appreciate that. Thank	k	
11	you.		
12	MR. HUDGINS: Assuming we were at tria	al	
13	and you had just gone to the bench and made		
14	that same objection, wouldn't the response of	É	
15	the court be you're welcome to redirect your		
16	witness and bring that out as part of your		
17	case?		
18	MR. BROWN: My duty in a deposition is	3	
19	to, if I have a form of the question		
20	objection, then I have to bring that up. And	b	
21	I view this as being form of the question.	Ι	
22	think it's just misleading and incorrect. So)	
23	with that said, it's not being done in front		
24	of the witness, so nobody is being		

	Page 84
1	MR. BROWN: I want to make an objection
2	to your question, line of questioning, in
3	that it's mischaracterizing the deposition
4	testimony of Jeffrey Hodges, testimony as to
5	the condition of the or the location of
6	the hinge at the top. The question was on
7	Page 101: Was it a flap or a hinge at the
8	top? And the answer was: I don't know. I
9	know I could see that the flapper was in
10	there, and to me it looked like it pivoted
11	from the center, but I don't know. To
12	categorically say that he is testifying
13	affirmatively that, you know, absolutely this
14	is the way it is is a mischaracterization of
15	the evidence. The evidence is very clear
16	that what he was clear on because what he
17	says is in terms of the location of the of
18	the fire. It says on Page 75, But you are
19	clear in your mind that there was some fire
20	that came from behind the damper apparatus?
21	Answer: Yes, absolutely. So you have the
22	location of the fire coming from beyond there
23	absolutely. And in terms of the structure of
24	what he is seeing, he is saying he doesn't

```
Page 83
 1
                     Where it says witness observations, are
              0
 2
     you familiar with that section?
 3
              Α
                     Yes.
 4
              Q
                     Now, based on our discussion of
 5
     Mr. Hodges' testimony regarding his observations of
 6
     the backblast damper in addition to his observations
 7
     of the fireball, did you do anything to support or
 8
     refute his observations with respect to the condition
 9
     of the backblast damper?
10
              Α
                     I don't understand the question.
11
              Q
                     Okay. Having read that and heard his
12
     description that it was open at the top and it looked
     like it was hinged in the center, okay, did you do any
13
     follow-up in order to assess the -- to either support
14
     that statement or refute that statement?
15
16
                     MR. BROWN:
                                 Before you answer that
17
              question, I'd like to make an objection.
18
              may be a speaking objection. Let's go off
19
              the Record. Could you leave the room for
20
              just a moment?
21
                     THE VIDEOGRAPHER: Off the Record.
2.2
23
                      (Discussion off the Record.)
24
```

```
Page 82
 1
     any other eyewitnesses to the events.
 2
                     Okay. And did you ask whether or not
 3
     there were any other people present?
 4
                     I don't remember if I inquired on that
 5
     or not.
 6
                     Have you read any of the depositions of
7
     the LCM employees who are not plaintiffs in this case?
 8
              Α
                     No. Well, I did -- versus what's on
 9
     that list, there is other LCM employees.
10
     Collins -- ones I looked at were David Garard, Tommy
11
     Lee Bonds, Jeff Hodges, John Paul Spangler, Danny
     Collins, and Ed Thompson.
12
13
                     Okay. And was there any information
14
     other than from Mr. Hodges that you had in terms of
     specific facts and observations as to where the
15
16
     explosion occurred?
17
                     Not that I recollect.
18
                     Now, referring back to Schloss 1 again,
     if we look to -- let me get to it -- 17.3.3.15, which
19
     is on Page 162 at the top.
20
21
                     17?
              Α
22
                     .3.3.15. It will be at the bottom
              0
     right of Page 162.
23
24
              Α
                     Okay.
```

```
Page 81
 1
              Α
                     Yes.
 2
              Q
                      Okay. And under 17.1.2 we have -- it's
 3
     that determination of the origin of the fire involves
 4
     the coordination of information derived from one or
 5
     more of the following: 1, witness information.
 6
     analysis of observations reported by persons who
     witnessed the fire or were aware of conditions present
 8
     at the time of the fire, correct?
 9
              Α
                      Yes.
10
                     And you previously told us that the
     information that you have is from the depositions of
11
     the plaintiffs, correct?
12
13
                     And fact --
              Α
14
                     That's one, first?
              Q
15
              Α
                      I mean, Federal-Mogul.
16
                     And the deposition of Federal-Mogul was
              Q
     of David Garard, correct?
17
                      Yes.
18
              Α
                     But Mr. Garard, you are not aware of
19
20
     whether he was at the plant that day or not?
21
              Α
                     No.
22
              Q
                     Okay.
23
              Α
                     And I am not familiar with if anybody
24
     from Federal-Mogul was at the plant or if there was
```

```
Page 80
 1
     BY MR. MORRIS:
 2
              Q
                     Mr. Schloss, we were referring to NFPA
 3
     921, and we have marked as Schloss 1 for
 4
     identification today a portion of 921 that starts with
 5
     Chapter 17, origin determination. Do you see that?
              Α
 6
                     Yes.
 7
              Q
                      Okay. And would you agree that that's
 8
     a applicable standard for your investigation in this
 9
     case?
10
              Α
                     Yes.
11
                     And do you accept NFPA 921 as
              Q
     authoritative in terms of the investigation of fires
12
     and explosions?
13
14
                     Only in the combustible dust side of
15
          I don't know anything about investigating a house
16
     fire or a car fire or something along that.
17
                     Fair enough. As it relates to --
              0
18
                     As it relates to combustible --
              Α
19
                     -- your field --
              Q
20
              Α
                     -- dust and what I do, yes, it does.
21
                     Okay. And within Chapter 17, origin
              0
22
     determination, there is sort of a recap of the
23
     methodology and the scientific method for origin
24
     determination, correct?
```

```
Page 79
 1
     that it would be subject to criticism?
 2
              Α
                     Yes.
 3
              Q
                     And within NFPA 921 in I believe it's
 4
     Chapter 17, there is a section that deals with witness
 5
     statements, correct?
 6
                     To know what chapter and what page and
     what -- I am not familiar.
 7
 8
                     Let's see if we can get to it.
 9
                     MR. MORRIS: Okay. Let's mark this as
10
              Schloss 1.
11
12
                      (Deposition Exhibit Schloss 1 was
13
              marked and entered into the Record.)
14
15
                     MR. BROWN: Do you have a copy for me?
16
                     MR. MORRIS: I don't.
17
                     MR. BROWN: Let's just take a moment,
18
              and I'll make a copy. Does anybody else want
19
              a copy of the exhibit?
20
                     THE VIDEOGRAPHER: Off the Record.
21
22
                     (A recess was taken.)
23
24
```

```
Page 78
 1
     collector.
 2
                      So the only relevant fact that you took
     in order to rely on his testimony was the fact that he
 3
 4
     said he could see past the damper. The details of
 5
     that description were not important to you?
 6
                     No, they were not important to me.
 7
     mean, the bigger thing was is that he could see past
     the damper and see the elbow, and that's where he saw
 8
 9
     the fireball generate and come out.
10
              Q
                     Okay. I saw on your resume that you
     are a member of NFPA.
11
12
              Α
                     Yes.
                     And I understand that to be a member of
13
14
     NFPA, all you have to do is pay the dues?
15
              Α
                     That's right.
16
                     Okay. But you are familiar with NFPA
              Q
     921?
17
18
                     Yes.
              Α
                     And you use the scientific methodology
19
     as directed by NFPA 921?
20
21
              Α
                     Yes.
22
                     And if -- is it your opinion that if
              0
     the scientific methodology as set forth in NFPA 921 is
23
24
     not used in a investigation of a fire or an explosion,
```

```
Page 77
 1
     top or bottom?
 2
                     You couldn't tell where it was hinged.
 3
              Q
                     Could you tell whether it was at the
 4
     top of the duct or at the bottom of the duct where it
 5
     was open?
 6
                     What he saw at that distance, I don't
 7
     know.
 8
              Q
                     Okay. So --
 9
                      I just -- without reading and believing
10
     what he described, I used more of the concept that he
11
     could see past that and see the elbow.
                     Okay. Well, you said previously the
12
              Q
     fact that you had his -- his testimony that he saw a
13
     fireball from --
14
15
              Α
                     Yes.
16
                      -- beyond the damper, that you accepted
17
     that as true?
18
              Α
                     Yes.
19
                     Okay. We have testimony from him
              Q
     indicating that his observations of the damper, which
20
     he had been able to see for a period of time prior to
21
22
     the explosion occurring, was incorrect?
23
              Α
                      It was incorrect, but he still said you
24
     could see past it to see the elbow going to the dust
```

```
Page 76
 1
     it would make that much of a difference on him looking
 2
     at it.
 3
              Q
                     And do you recall him testifying as
 4
     follows: Question: Where you saw that you could see
 5
     a gap on the side, the top or the bottom.
 6
                     MR. BROWN: What page are you on?
 7
 8
     BY MR. MORRIS:
                     101 Line 5. The total question is:
 9
10
     That's what I am trying to find out, where you saw
11
     that you could see a gap on the side, the top or the
     bottom. I apologize for the paraphrase. Answer:
12
                                                          Ι
     could see over the top of it from the center up.
13
     you recall reading that in his deposition?
14
15
              Α
                     Yes.
16
                     Okay.
17
                     I don't remember what was just ahead of
18
     that.
19
                     Is that an accurate description of the
              Q
     configuration of the backblast damper?
20
21
                     No, but looking down 40 feet of
22
     ductwork with a flashlight, that may have been what
     his interpretation of what he saw is.
23
24
              Q
                     That you couldn't tell whether it was
```

```
Page 75
 1
     explosion.
 2
              Q
                     Okay. Where is the hinge located for
 3
     the flap?
 4
              Α
                     At the top of the flap.
 5
                     Do you recall reading in Mr. Hodges'
 6
     deposition when he was asked: Was the flap of the
7
     hinge at the top? And he answered: I don't know.
 8
     know that I could see the flapper that was in there,
     and to me it looked like it pivoted from the center,
 9
10
     but I don't know. Do you recall reading that?
11
              Α
                     Yes. Yes, I recall that.
12
              Q
                     Is that an accurate description of the
13
     damper?
14
                     From the -- the flap would have been
              Α
15
     hinged at the top. He may have been looking at the --
16
     I am not sure what his interpretation of the damper
     and the hinge was. I used more that he could see past
17
18
     that to see the elbow.
19
                     Do you recall that he testified that he
              Q
     thought it was a center hinge and that it moved both
20
21
     up and down? Do you recall that testimony?
22
              Α
                     Yes.
23
                     Okay.
              Q
24
              Α
                     I don't see where that -- the design of
```

```
Page 74
 1
     BY MR. MORRIS:
 2
                     For the purposes of my question, okay,
 3
     can you refer to Page 101?
 4
                     MR. BROWN: He would have to have the
 5
              deposition. I don't think he has the
 6
              deposition in there.
 7
                     THE WITNESS: I don't think I do.
 8
                     MR. BROWN: I think he quotes the
              deposition in his report.
 9
                     THE WITNESS: But I don't think I
10
11
              pulled that out separately.
12
     BY MR. MORRIS:
13
14
                     Mr. Schloss, let me ask you another --
                     Uh-huh.
15
              Α
16
                     Okay. Can you describe for me the
     construction of the backblast damper?
17
                     It's a rectangular box with -- in just
18
     general terms, rectangular box with round collars on
19
20
     either end to fit the ductwork, a incline blade that
21
     seals against a -- one of those collars to stop the
     transmission of energy back through the ductwork.
22
     It's made to be open while the equipment is running
23
24
     and the air is flowing across it and closed during an
```

```
Page 73
 1
     did that give you any information?
 2
              Α
                     That the fireball had originated in the
 3
     bag house.
 4
              Q
                     In terms of his description --
 5
     withdrawn. Do you recall what his description of the
 6
     damper was at his deposition?
 7
              Α
                     No, but I can look at it.
 8
                     THE WITNESS: Do you have a copy of his
 9
              deposition, for Hodges? I may have a copy,
10
              just that page.
11
                     MR. BROWN: No, not without my notes on
12
              it, but we can -- we can take a quick break
13
              and get a copy of these pages if you like.
14
              Want to do that?
15
                     MR. HUDGINS: What were you looking
16
              for?
17
                     MR. MORRIS: Let me see if I want --
18
                     MR. ALEXANDER: Does he want it?
19
20
     BY MR. MORRIS:
21
                     If you have his deposition, if you
22
     looked at Page 101 --
23
                     MR. BROWN: It's on a number of pages.
24
              It starts well before that.
```

```
Page 72
 1
                     Okay. And what did you do to test that
              0
 2
     account from Mr. Hodges?
 3
              Α
                     The other thing I used in doing that
 4
     was the video and looked at the flashes and where
 5
     those flashes originated. And so by using that with
 6
     his reaction, I determined that the explosion had
7
     taken place in the duct -- in the bag house, not in
 8
     the ductwork, the initial explosion.
 9
                     Did you consider Mr. Hodges' statement
10
     to be reliable?
11
              Α
                     Yes.
12
              Q
                     Okay. And what was that based on?
                     Based on that he was there and seeing
13
          I have talked to other people that have been
14
     involved in them, in explosions and in flash fires,
15
16
     and found them to be very reliable in what they
               It may be something as easy as they saw,
17
     you know, bright orange flash coming out of a
18
     55-gallon drum and landing 30 feet or 40 feet away
19
     from the -- but they remember where the origin and
20
21
     what they saw.
22
                     Okay. And when Mr. Hodges stated that
23
     he could see that the fireball originated beyond the
24
     damper, or the flue or whatever he called it, okay,
```

Page 71 1 the area where the plaintiffs were working. 2 Α That could have been just by the 3 vacuum. It could have been by the flow. 4 Q Okay. 5 I guess any material flowing through a 6 pipe like that is going to cause a static buildup. 7 Just different materials dissipate it differently. 8 But you indicated previously that 9 that -- that the creation of the static electricity 10 and generation of sparks was a potential source of 11 ignition for combustion and explosion in this case? In -- it's a source of sparks and 12 Α having air going through a PVC pipe, yes, anything 13 that's ungrounded. Even ungrounded or unbonded steel, 14 15 you can still have the same issues. 16 Q Okay. Now, with respect to the explosion itself, in your report you indicate that the 17 number one fact that you relied upon here was the 18 testimony of Mr. Hodges that he saw an explosion in 19 20 the bag house; is that correct? He saw a fireball coming down the 21 22 ductwork. He said he could see past the backdraft --23 or backblast damper into the elbow, and he saw the 24 fireball originate from that point.

```
Page 70
 1
              Α
                     No.
 2
              Q
                     Are you aware whether or not flexible
 3
     hose is manufactured so that it does have grounding
     material in it?
 4
 5
                     Yes, it does.
 6
                     In this case there is nothing to
 7
     suggest that this flexible hose had any grounding
     material in it, correct?
 8
                     I have no information on that.
 9
10
                     And then we get to the PVC pipe, or the
11
     lance as you referred to it. And was the use of PV --
     is the use of PVC pipe in cleaning aluminum dust
12
     ventilation systems appropriate?
13
14
                     It's nonconductive. So in anything
15
     that's combustible dust, you need to use conductive
16
     materials. PVC is not conductive, and I don't know of
     anything that's commercially available like that that
17
     is conductive.
18
19
                     Is it nonsparking?
20
                     It will -- it will not transfer a
              Α
21
             A spark will build up on the surface of the
22
     PVC, but it's not going to release a spark.
23
                     And, in fact, in this case the
              Q
24
     information we have is that it did generate sparks in
```

```
Page 69
    be conductive nonsparking material? Is that --
 1
 2
              Α
                     Yes.
 3
              Q
                     -- part of NFPA requirements? In this
 4
     case, we had the vacuum truck, which we have already
 5
     discussed. And then from that there was aluminum pipe
     that was attached to the vacuum truck, correct?
 7
                     Yeah, per my understanding and the
              Α
 8
    pictures.
 9
                     Would that aluminum pipe fit those
10
     requirements?
11
              Α
                     Yes.
                     Okay. The flexible hose that was used
12
              Q
    here?
13
                     There are flexible hoses that are
14
              Α
15
     conductive. I don't remember exactly whether the hose
16
     that was used at this point was conductive material or
     nonconductive construction.
17
                     You had an opportunity to see --
18
              Q
19
              Α
                     I saw it.
20
                     -- that hose?
              Q
                     I took a picture of it and was more --
21
              Α
22
     looked at the lance and the PVC there.
23
                     The flexible hose that was used, do you
              Q
24
     know whether or not that was grounded in any way?
```

Page 68

```
1
     reporter, please wait until I finish my question
 2
     completely before you start your answer. I will do my
 3
     best to extend you the same courtesy and allow you to
 4
     finish your answer completely before I move on. If at
 5
     any time you feel that you have not finished your
     answer, please let me know, and we will make sure that
 6
 7
     we get a complete record and one that we will all be
     able to read for the benefit of our reporter, okay?
 8
 9
              Α
                     Thank you.
10
                     We were discussing the vacuum truck
11
     previously and the equipment that was being used by
     the plaintiffs in their cleaning operation.
12
     mentioned a few things, so I just want to go through
13
14
     the equipment that was being used in terms of the
     bonding and grounding of the equipment.
15
                     With respect to the cleaning of ducts
16
     involving aluminum dust ventilation system, would you
17
     agree that you should use grounded and nonconductive
18
     equipment?
19
20
              Α
                     Yes.
                           NFPA requires that all of the
     ductwork, both in that type of system, a vacuum
21
22
     system, a dust collection system, be grounded and
23
     bonded.
24
              Q
                     And that whatever is being used should
```

```
Page 67
     going across that in that vacuum truck, going in the
 1
 2
     ductwork, not in the vacuum truck.
 3
              Q
                     Okay. And we do know that there was a
     fire or some type of explosion within the vacuum truck
 5
     itself, correct?
 6
                     Which -- yes.
 7
                     And that's not revealed on the video as
 8
     to when that occurred?
 9
              Α
                     No.
10
                     And we have no eyewitness information
11
     as to when that occurred in relation to any other --
12
                     Not that I am --
              Α
13
                     -- event of the explosion?
                     -- familiar with.
14
              Α
                     MR. MORRIS: I apologize. Can we take
15
16
              a quick break?
17
                     MR. BROWN: Sure.
                     THE VIDEOGRAPHER: Off the Record.
18
19
20
                      (A recess was taken.)
21
22
     BY MR. MORRIS:
                     Mr. Schloss, continuing on -- first,
23
24
     before we go further, at the request of our court
```

```
Page 66
 1
     you -- are you aware of that?
 2
              Α
                     No.
                          It may have been in deposition,
 3
     but I don't recollect it.
 4
              Q
                     Next question: So the only operating
 5
     machinery that we have in this closed system is the
     vacuum truck, correct?
 6
 7
              Α
                     Yes.
 8
                     Okay. And in your analysis, you -- you
 9
     didn't ask for any information or did not find any
10
     information as to any safety procedures in terms of
11
     grounding the truck and/or the system that were taken
     with respect to the vacuum truck, correct?
12
                          The vacuum truck -- the vacuum
13
                     No.
14
     truck itself is intrinsically safe. The ductwork and
15
     everything that's hooked up to it would be hard --
16
     would be hard to ground in that you have hose, you
     have PVC hose, and PVC pipe that you are using as a
17
            So you would not have a continuous bonded path
18
     from the time you are collecting it until the time you
19
20
     are getting to the vacuum truck.
21
                     Does that create --
              0
2.2
                     It creates --
              Α
23
                     -- any additional risk of --
              Q
24
              Α
                     It can create a potential of a spark
```

```
Page 65
 1
                     THE WITNESS: The system grounded or
 2
              the vacuum truck grounded?
 3
 4
     BY MR. MORRIS:
 5
                     Well, two things that -- we will go
 6
     through that. First of all, there has been testimony
7
     that there was no grounding of the truck itself, okay?
8
     What grounding of the system are you referring to?
 9
                     The grounding of the piping and
10
     everything off of the vacuum truck, from the vacuum
     truck out.
11
                     And in your investigation, is there any
12
              Q
     information that you have that any of the equipment
13
14
     that was connected to the vacuum truck was grounded?
15
              Α
                     No.
16
                     Okay. So we haven't -- so the truck
     isn't grounded and the system isn't grounded; is that
17
     correct?
18
              Α
                     Well, if the -- I don't understand the
19
     truck not being grounded.
20
21
                     There has been testimony that there is
22
     a specific method that they use in order to ground the
     truck, that they can take a ground wire and attach it
23
24
     somewhere.
                 That was not done in this case.
```

```
Page 64
 1
     points between the air that's being brought into it
 2
     and the air outside?
 3
              Α
                     No, because the friction that you are
 4
     going to -- the friction of sucking through all those
 5
     devices is going to heat that air up quite a bit. You
 6
     are going to end up with about a 2 degree rise for
7
     every horsepower that those vacuums pull.
 8
                     And the vacuum truck itself are
 9
     intrinsically safe, which means they are grounded,
10
     bonded, everything. It by itself is a safe operating
     -- if that wasn't true, you would be blowing up a lot
11
     of vacuum trucks.
12
                     All right. And did you read in the
13
     deposition transcripts in this case that the vacuum
14
15
     truck was not grounded at the time of its operation at
16
     Federal-Mogul?
17
                     I did not read that.
18
                     Okay. And so --
              0
19
                     But, again, being grounded as the --
              Α
20
              Q
                     Mr. Schloss, I am going to --
21
              Α
                     -- truck or the system being grounded?
2.2
                     MR. BROWN: He can answer the question.
23
                     MR. MORRIS: He did answer the
24
              question. He went beyond my question.
```

```
Page 63
 1
              Α
                     The vacuum truck, in my professional
 2
     experience, is a very safe device by itself.
 3
     only when you start hooking things up to it. So the
 4
     vacuum truck actually creating and originating the
 5
     explosion in the vacuum truck I ruled out.
 6
                     Okay. Well, my first question was:
 7
     Did you consider it as a potential source of ignition
 8
     for the explosion that occurred in this case?
 9
              Α
                     Yes.
10
                     Okay. And the vacuum truck,
11
     essentially, is similar to a bag house in that you are
     pulling the dust and debris into a collection system,
12
     correct?
13
14
              Α
                     Yes.
15
                     And as part of this operation, we have
16
     a closed system between the bag house, the ductwork,
17
     the --
18
              Α
                     Yes.
19
                     -- PVC pipe, the flexible hose, the
              Q
20
     aluminum pipe, into the vacuum truck, correct?
21
              Α
                     Yes.
22
                     The vacuum truck is outside similar to
              0
23
     the bag house. Would that be subject to the same
24
     situation in terms of the difference between dew
```

```
Page 62
 1
              factor? Was that the factor that -- of an
 2
              explosion? I don't see it.
 3
 4
     BY MR. MORRIS:
 5
                     Is it fair to say that in evaluating
 6
     all the potential causes of the explosion here that
     eventually you came down to two possible causes, one
7
     being the generation of the static electricity by the
 8
 9
     use of the PVC pipe by the plaintiffs, or, as you
10
     mentioned earlier, an exothermic reaction in the bag
     house?
11
12
              Α
                     Yes.
                     And you were able to eliminate every
13
14
     other cause at that point?
15
              Α
                     I'd have to go back through that list
16
     of what I gave you, but, I mean, that was really --
     really, at that point it came down to the video and my
17
     opinion or my interpretation of the video of which
18
     flashes were the bag house exploding and what flash
19
     was the stuff coming back down the ductwork.
20
21
                     Now, did you consider -- just consider
22
     as part of your evaluation here whether or not the
23
     vacuum truck could have been a potential source of
24
     ignition for this explosion?
```

```
Page 61
 1
                     No. I looked at -- you know, looked at
              Α
 2
     the devices, you know, looked at a piece of PVC pipe
 3
     and the hose and the duct and how they had it all
 4
     hooked together and, you know, you can generate a
 5
     spark --
 6
              Q
                     Okay.
              Α
                     -- with the --
                     MR. BROWN: Excuse me. Let him finish
 8
 9
              his answers. Please don't talk over him.
                     THE WITNESS: You can generate a spark
10
11
              in it. Whether every other condition was
12
              there at the time of the spark is really --
13
              you know, again you are vacuuming something
14
              in, so you are not generating a dust cloud.
15
              You are sucking the dust cloud into it. You
16
              are vacuuming, you know, the -- you are
17
              vacuuming, you know, where the PVC will flow
              through any type of -- any type or any type
18
19
              of material is going to cause a static
20
              buildup. PVC is not recommended to use for
21
              that. You know, yes, there was things that
22
              were not safe that were going to generate
23
              sparks or less safe than they could have
24
              been, but was that, you know, a contributing
```

```
Page 60
 1
     your --
 2
              Α
                     Yeah.
 3
              Q
                     -- prior investigations and otherwise,
 4
     that had they been following proper safety procedures,
 5
     you could have eliminated that as a cause; is that --
     is that fair?
 6
 7
                     You can never eliminate a hundred
              Α
 8
     percent of the risk of doing something like that even
 9
     safely, you know, following every safety procedure.
10
                     I have a chemical plant that I do work
11
     in that had six people clean out a dust collector, a
     welder strike an arc, and get burned across the faces.
12
     You know, they met every one of their safety
13
     requirements. They had everything -- he had the
14
     proper PPE on. Luckily, it didn't burn his eyes, but
15
     burned the hair off of his face.
16
                     And in this case, did you evaluate all
17
     of those things as well?
18
                     I was told about it. I didn't evaluate
19
              Α
20
            It was for a customer that I was doing some
21
     work with and an --
22
                     No, no, in this case.
              0
23
                     -- incident they talked about.
              Α
24
              Q
                     I understand.
```

```
Page 59
                     -- cause that has to be considered in
 1
              Α
 2
     my evaluation.
 3
              Q
                     And as part of that analysis, you have
 4
     to look at what equipment is being used?
 5
              Α
                     Yes.
 6
                     And what potential there is for that
 7
     creating a -- an environment in which there could be
 8
     an explosion, correct?
 9
              Α
                     Yes.
10
                     And in this instance, in looking at
11
     that and determining whether or not the equipment that
     was being used for the cleaning of the aluminum duct,
12
     did you reach any opinions as to whether or not that
13
     was a potential cause?
14
15
                     It was potential cause of -- what they
16
     were doing could cause an explosion, yes. In terms of
     if you isolate just that one part of it, yes, that
17
     would --
18
19
                     But that's part of your analysis?
20
              Α
                     Yeah.
                            If you isolate and say they were
     taking a piece of PVC and putting it -- hooked to a
21
     vacuum truck, putting it into aluminum, there is a
22
23
     cause there that you are going to generate sparks.
24
              Q
                     And based on your experience and
```

```
Page 58
 1
           And you would agree with me, as we said before,
 2
     that you have to go through all possible causes and
 3
     eliminate them through scientific --
 4
              Α
                      Yeah.
 5
              0
                      -- methodology pursuant to NFPA 921,
 6
     correct?
 7
              Α
                      Yes.
 8
                      Okay. One of those causes could be the
 9
     actions of the workers in this case. Could be,
10
     correct?
11
                      It was generating sparks and --
              Α
                      Okay. Just -- will you agree with
12
              Q
13
     me --
14
                      If you want me to stop right there,
              Α
15
     that that's as far as you want me to go --
16
              Q
                      I want you to answer my question right
17
     now.
18
              Α
                      Okay.
                      My question is: The actions of the
19
              Q
     plaintiffs, of the LCM employees, that is a potential
20
     cause that has to be considered in your evaluation
21
22
     of --
23
              Α
                      That is potential --
24
                      -- this explosion?
              Q
```

```
Page 57
 1
     potential causes for the explosion.
 2
                     And can the failure to follow proper
 3
     safety procedures be a contributing cause to an
 4
     explosion?
 5
                     How about rephrase the question?
 6
                     Sure. Do you need to eliminate the
7
     improper use of equipment or a failure to follow
 8
     necessary safety procedures as a cause of an
 9
     explosion?
10
                     I look at what they were doing as a
11
     cause of an explosion. How they picked them and the
     decision that they made to pick those types of devices
12
     doesn't really matter. It's -- it's what was
13
     physically being done at the time of the explosion.
14
15
              0
                     Okay. And in this particular instance,
16
     did you reach any opinion as to whether or not the
     actions of the plaintiffs could have caused or
17
     contributed to the explosion that occurred?
18
              Α
                     I don't -- in my professional opinion,
19
     it didn't contribute to the explosion in the dust
20
21
     collector.
22
                     Not my question.
              0
23
              Α
                     Okay.
24
                     I understand what your final opinion
              Q
```

Page 56 1 Well, in evaluating the potential 0 2 causes of an explosion, would one of the factors be 3 what the individuals were doing and whether or not 4 they were taking appropriate safety procedures before 5 you reach your final opinion? 6 Before -- I looked at what they were 7 doing, not what they were trained to do. I looked at --8 Okay. Well --9 10 -- devices they were using on the 11 cleaning when we did the field -- looked at it in the field and looked at the devices they used and the hose 12 and tubing and things like that. I looked at those. 13 I did not look at whether they were trained in -- they 14 may have been trained, and that's the decision they 15 16 made to use those equipment. It doesn't necessarily mean training equals results. 17 And for the purpose of this question, I 18 am not asking about their training. I am asking about 19 actually what they were doing and whether or not they 20 followed proper safety procedures, if that's a factor 21 22 that you would consider in evaluating the potential causes for this explosion. 23 24 Α I evaluated what they were doing as

Page 55 1 I understand. But based on your 0 2 experience where you have evaluated explosions and you 3 have trained people on how to work around these types 4 of systems --5 If I was contracted with LCM, I 6 would -- I would have evaluated their systems. And if they were deficient, I would have made the 7 8 recommendations to do the training. 9 Did you read in the deposition 10 transcripts that the supervisor of the job was aware 11 that aluminum dust was the product in the system they were cleaning? Do you recall that? 12 Yes, that it was -- aluminum dust was 13 14 the product. Whether he realized that aluminum dust was combustible, I didn't see that. 15 16 Q Okay. And if he testified that he was not aware that aluminum dust was combustible, do you 17 have an opinion as to whether or not that is a safe 18 procedure for LCM to proceed in cleaning the ducts at 19 20 Federal-Mogul? 21 Well, really, I am not here to evaluate 22 what LCM did, you know, and -- you know, and whether they trained their people onto it. I can only look at 23 24 the results of what that was.

```
Page 54
 1
     very strong about teaching of -- training of your
 2
     employees.
 3
              Q
                     And have you evaluated Federal-Mogul's
 4
     training procedures for its employees relating to the
 5
     aluminum dust ventilation system?
 6
                     I have seen in Federal-Mogul's
 7
     combustible dust management guidance and the
     management program where they talk about that. I have
 8
 9
     looked at what -- what's available at that point, but
10
     no farther than that.
11
                     Okay. And what about LCM? Did you
     evaluate their --
12
13
              A
                     No.
14
                     -- procedures with respect to working
     on an aluminum dust ventilation system?
15
16
              Α
                     No.
17
                     And why not?
                     My understanding from reading the
18
     depositions, I guess, was is that they were not
19
     advised of the risk of aluminum combustible dust.
20
21
     actual workers that were on the platforms were not
22
     advised of combustible dust. Again, whether LCM is,
23
     you know, negligent at that point or liable for that
24
     point, I am not here to talk about that.
```

```
Page 53
 1
                     More likely than not.
              Α
 2
              Q
                     -- the function of the system, it was
 3
     able to handle those small explosions if it did occur?
 4
              Α
                     But you don't design for small
 5
     explosions.
 6
                     That's not my question at this point.
 7
     I understand --
 8
              Α
                     That's my answer. That's my answer at
 9
     this point is is you can have explosions in anything
10
     that's not going to result in the damage or even
11
     triggering any, you know, explosion protection device.
     It depends on what the dust is at that moment, what
12
     the ignition source is at that moment, how much
13
     dispersion you have at that moment, how much volume of
14
15
     material you have. All those things together are
16
     going to determine how strong of an explosion do you
17
     get.
18
                     And would you agree with me that when
     you are working with an aluminum dust ventilation
19
     system, that whoever is working on that should be
20
     aware of the risk of explosion in a system of that
21
22
     type?
23
              Α
                     Federal-Mogul is required to teach
24
     their people the risks around that. I mean, NFPA is
```

```
Page 52
 1
     going to burn anything. You can get exothermic
 2
     reaction of a bigger pile of dust, and it may catch it
 3
     on fire.
 4
              0
                     I understand that. I understand that,
 5
     but what -- if I understand what you have told me is
     that there could have been prior exothermic
 6
 7
     reactions --
 8
              Α
                     There could have.
 9
                     -- in the bag house that resulted in
10
     smoldering and then, for whatever reason, fizzled out
11
     or stopped.
12
              Α
                     Yes.
                     Because if it continued, we would have
13
     seen something else occur. There could have been
14
15
     exothermic reactions that led to a small explosion
16
     that went undetected because no one was in the area to
     see it, hear it, or --
17
18
                    And not be --
              Α
19
                     -- know it happened?
              Q
20
                     And not be strong enough to activate
              Α
21
     the explosion vents.
22
                     Right, okay. So all I am saying is
              0
23
     that if that occurred, and you say that's a
24
     possibility that it did occur, that in terms of --
```

Page 51 1 BY MR. MORRIS: 2 I will adopt probability. 3 Α I have been in a plant that did shot 4 blasting, and I asked and said, Have you ever had an 5 explosion? They said, No, but every now and then our 6 dust collector goes plump and the sides pulse out. 7 You know, have they been having explosions? Yes. They just didn't have one at a high enough degree that 8 9 was going to cause the thing to rip apart or, you 10 know, the vents to actuate. You could have had 11 exothermic reactions for all those seven years that 12 would have went undetected and not cause an explosion. It could have been the first time in seven years there 13 was an exothermic reaction. 14 15 So based on that then, in terms of the 0 16 explosion containment of that, if that did occur, then 17 the system operated properly on those prior occasions, correct? 18 19 Α No. I mean, no, because it may not 20 have met -- it may not have resulted in an explosion. 21 It may not have resulted in a fire. 22 Well --0 You can have exothermic reaction of a 23 Α 24 small pile of dust that's sitting there, and it's not

```
Page 50
 1
              things line up that's going to happen.
 2
              of bag houses explode for no apparent reason.
 3
              Why did they explode that day versus 40 years
 4
              prior to it? You know, a lot of times there
 5
              is no real definite answer and say, well, it
 6
              blew up this day because of this and it blew
 7
              up this day -- you know, why didn't it do for
 8
              the last 40 years? So it -- all those things
 9
              have got to come together at one time.
10
11
     BY MR. MORRIS:
12
              0
                     And I understand that. That's why I am
     asking you -- you can't say to a reasonable degree of
13
     engineering certainty as to why it did not occur on
14
     any other prior day, even though the same conditions
15
16
     may have been present?
17
                     It may have --
                                 Before you answer, form of
18
                     MR. BROWN:
19
              the question objection. You asked about
20
              engineering certainty, and that's certainly
21
              not what the standard is. It's probability.
22
                     MR. ALEXANDER: Reasonable degree of
23
              engineering probability.
24
```

Page 49 1 opinion that the conditions for an exothermic reaction 2 and the other -- as an ignition source and the other 3 elements that would lead to an explosion were present 4 in that bag house? 5 Α 6 All right. And as you sit here today, 7 you cannot give an opinion with a reasonable degree of 8 engineering certainty as to why an explosion would not 9 have occurred on any day prior to this? 10 Well, it really depends on if the 11 equipment -- if the dust collector itself is running, is operating. You are moving warm air across the 12 steel, so you have less condensation. 13 If it's running, you know, it's -- an explosion is a perfect 14 15 storm. All those things have got to come together. 16 Q Well, let me --17 MR. BROWN: Excuse me, he is not 18 finished answering yet. 19 MR. MORRIS: I think he is going beyond 20 the question. That's why -- so --21 MR. BROWN: He is entitled to finish 2.2 his answer. 23 THE WITNESS: I think an explosion is a 24 perfect storm. You have to have all these

- 1 exothermic reaction then isn't dependent on additional
- 2 water. Once it starts that reaction, it's going to
- 3 keep heating itself. It's all self-contained.
- 4 Q Okay. Well, then, based on what you
- 5 have told us so far, when this ventilation system
- 6 started operating back in 2003 or so and you had those
- 7 conditions, are you saying that an exothermic reaction
- 8 very likely would have started back in 2003?
- 9 A If you have the same situation that you
- 10 have there that day, that's very possible or, in my
- 11 opinion, would happen.
- 12 Q Okay. Well --
- 13 A In my opinion, you would have that
- 14 same -- whether it would have resulted into a fire or
- 15 an explosion really would have been dependent on the
- 16 material in the bag house.
- 17 Q I think that's obviously where we are
- 18 going to get to next is -- and, again, the ignition
- 19 source we come to is why on this day was there a
- 20 confluence of factors that occurred here. And I am
- 21 not asking the question yet, but that's obviously
- 22 where I am going.
- 23 Previously, based on your testimony and
- 24 based on the conditions that were there, is it your

Page 47 1 set it down, pretty soon the water starts condensing 2 on the outside of it and going -- running down the 3 sides of your Coke can. Okay. 4 Take the same Coke can when it's 20 5 degrees outside, and the water does not form because 6 the temperature of the Coke is higher than the dew 7 point temperature of the air around it. Reversing that and putting the moisture 8 9 on the inside of the bag house in a cold skin 10 temperature with steel that has very rapid temperature 11 exchanges, you are going to have a -- the bag house is going to cool very quickly down to that outside 12 temperature and then the dew point, and you are going 13 to start having sweating on the inside of that bag 14 15 house. It can sweat on the bags. It can sweat on the 16 sides, in the hoppers. 17 If -- if the bag house is shut down for an extended period of time, for more than the up to 18 hour and a half that we have here, let's say 24 hours, 19 20 48 hours or longer, does that affect the -- that situation with the condensation? 21

are going to start exothermic reactions.

material, in the case with metal, as in aluminum, you

Once the condensation is into the

22

23

24

```
1
                     Depending on the -- one, if the bag
 2
     house is operating, and two is is what the outside
 3
     conditions are. If the bag house is not operating
 4
     or -- or if it's cold outside, depending on what the
 5
     outside temperature and the dew points are, you will
 6
     start to condense on the inside of the bag house.
 7
                     A lot of processes that are in
 8
     metal-producing plants, you insulate the bag house to
 9
     keep that transfer from happening so that you don't
10
     end up with the skin temperature dropping below the
11
     dew point temperature and condensing water into it.
                     Okay. And what if -- okay. Is there
12
              Q
     any similar type of situation that would occur when
13
14
     the temperature outside is hotter than it is inside?
15
              Α
                     No.
16
                     Okay. So the difference in dew
     point -- you could have a difference in dew point --
17
18
                     Two things. One is the outside
     temperature, which is going to determine what the
19
20
     temperature of the steel in the bag house is and what
     your inside humidity is on the -- on the bag house.
21
22
                     To use an example, if you have a Coke
     can in the middle of the summertime, and the Coke is
23
24
     40 degrees inside the can, you walk outside and you
```

- 1 have any effect on the amount of -- or will that have
- 2 any effect on the dew point for the interior of the
- 3 Federal-Mogul plant?
- 4 A Over time it would. In that amount of
- 5 time, I don't think you would see -- my personal or my
- 6 professional opinion is you wouldn't see much of a
- 7 change in it. Again, too, by having that
- 8 water-producing equipment, it was producing water
- 9 while it was running as well. So the dust collector
- 10 would have been seeing that moisture over an extended
- 11 period of time.
- 12 Q So, again, that -- whenever it was
- operating over the seven years before, you are
- 14 indicating that there would have been moisture in the
- 15 air that was being transported into the bag house?
- 16 A Yes.
- 17 Q Is that correct? Okay. And that the
- 18 moisture that's being transported, if it's shut down
- 19 for a short period of time, such as a half an hour to
- 20 an hour and a half, would have no effect on the
- 21 moisture being transferred to the bag house? That's a
- 22 bad question. Let me withdraw that. Let me ask
- 23 another question. The -- the water vapor that gets to
- 24 the bag house, what happens to it when it's in there?

Page 44 1 -- just the production line that was 0 2 for the aluminum dust, that created the aluminum dust? 3 Α My understanding was -- again, I didn't 4 check to see if the rest of the plant was running. 5 interest was in the lines that were served by that 6 dust collector. And if you were running the process -- if you were running the dry dust collectors, you 8 would have to be running the wet dust collectors to 9 handle another part of this same production line. 10 my assumption was is that since both of them were 11 running at that -- required to run, that it would be a requirement that both the dust collector and the wet 12 dust collector would be running. And, again, that's 13 based on how the system is currently designed or --14 15 and what was specified in Federal-Mogul's design 16 documents. Okay. And based on your prior answer, 17 it's your understanding that that particular line, the 18 aluminum dust ventilation system, including the water 19 vapor-producing equipment, had been shut down between 20 a half hour and an hour and a half before LCM started 21 2.2 its work? 23 Α Yes. 24 The fact that it's shut down, does that Q

```
Page 43
 1
                     Okay. Have you done any testing or
              0
 2
     created any models to determine the extent to which
 3
     that particular equipment in the Federal-Mogul plant
 4
     would raise the dew point or increase the relative
 5
     humidity for the plant air?
 6
              Α
                     No, but I know how to do it. I do it
     as part of my business. I just did not do it in this
 7
 8
     case.
 9
                     So, as you sit here today, can you
10
     provide any basis for -- withdrawn. Can you tell us
11
     what the dew point was for the Federal-Mogul plant
     inside the plant on December 31 of 2010?
12
13
              Α
                     No.
14
                     Do you know whether or not the water
              0
15
     vapor-producing equipment was operating at
16
     Federal-Mogul on that day?
17
                     I have been told that it was.
18
                     Okay. Told by who?
              0
19
                     Again, when I asked the question was
              Α
     the plant operating, they said up to the time when it
20
     was shut down to start cleaning the ductwork.
21
22
                     And when you say the plant being shut
23
     down, is that the entire plant or --
24
              Α
                     No, the process.
```

```
Page 42
 1
     vapor into the plant.
 2
              Q
                     Is there any way to test that?
 3
              Α
                     Yes.
 4
                     How would you test that?
 5
                     You can test versus the outside.
 6
     take a measuring device that's going to measure
7
     temperature and wet-bulb temperature or temperature
 8
     and absolute humidity. There is different devices
 9
     that you can tell how much moisture is being added.
10
                     And for this case, did -- did you do
11
     any type of model or any type of testing -- well,
                 Let me ask you this first: Are the water
12
     withdrawn.
     vapor-producing equipment that you referred to still
13
14
     operating at Federal-Mogul?
15
                     The understanding I had was the plant
     was running at -- up until the time it was shut
16
17
     down --
18
                     I'm sorry to cut you off. Not that
     day. I am talking about after the explosion and when
19
     you got the request to do your review in this case.
20
     Do you know, as of today or at any time since you have
21
22
     had it, whether or not that equipment is still being
23
     used?
24
              Α
                     I don't have any direct knowledge.
```

```
Page 41
 1
     were all installed at the same time for this
 2
     production line, would mean there would be vapor --
 3
     free water vapor in the air.
 4
              Q
                     Okay. And that would be for the entire
 5
     plant?
 6
                     Well, I mean, you would have just in
 7
     the -- I looked at just the area of where they were
8
     doing the production side of it.
 9
                     Okay. With respect to the water
10
     vapor-generating equipment, okay, does that raise the
11
     relative humidity of the air for the entire plant?
                           Relative humidity is a number
12
              Α
                     Yes.
     that says just exactly what it is. It's relative to
13
     how much moisture does it have versus how much
14
15
     moisture can it have. So what it was actually doing
     was raising the entire dew point of the plant.
16
                     Didn't you do any calculations for the
17
     extent to which the dew point was raised in the
18
     plant --
19
20
              Α
                     No.
21
                     -- as a result of this equipment?
              0
22
                     Other than my experience with wet dust
              Α
23
     collectors is you are putting water vapor into the
24
     plant. You have got employees that are putting water
```

```
Page 40
 1
                     Or whether it was actually done?
              0
 2
              Α
                     That was outside of the scope of what I
 3
     was looking at.
 4
              Q
                     You mentioned specifically water
 5
     vapor-generating equipment in the plant?
 6
              Α
                     Yes.
 7
                     Where did you get information about
              Q
 8
     that subject?
 9
                     From the proposal -- or from
10
     Federal-Mogul's specs on the original project, it
11
     required two dry dust collectors and then two wet dust
     collectors for the process, a different part of the
12
     process. A wet dust collector works by either
13
     spraying water into the air to take out the
14
15
     particulate or by running the air through a tank and
16
     through a bath to remove the particulate as well.
17
              0
                     Okay.
18
                     There was talking about -- then their
     specifications also had a sludge-handling equipment,
19
     which meant what was coming off of the dust collector
20
     is going to be a mixture of both particulate and water
21
22
     that's going to come out wet to be dried.
23
                     So just the inclusion of those two
24
     pieces of equipment in the general area, because they
```

```
Page 39
 1
     procedures of the workers?
 2
                     When I teach it and teach safe
 3
     operation of dust collectors, lockout/tagout is a big
     issue in it.
 4
 5
                     Okay. And are you familiar that with
 6
     lockout/tagout that it's the individual working on the
 7
     equipment that's responsible for making sure that's
 8
           Are you familiar with that standard?
 9
                     Yes. And I don't know who locked out
10
     what or how many locks were on it.
11
              Q
                     Okay.
12
                     Or what Federal-Mogul's internal
     procedures are or requirements.
13
14
                     Let's see. Now, this may be similar,
15
     but the operational condition of the plant, I quess
16
     that -- we are talking about the same thing, either --
     whether that's the machines or the dust collection
17
     system. And, again, you were just provided the
18
     information that there was a lockout and tagout, but
19
     you are not -- you don't have any information as to
20
21
     whether or not that was checked by the plaintiffs?
2.2
              Α
                     No.
23
                     Or who did it?
              Q
24
              Α
                     That was outside the scope --
```

```
Page 38
 1
                     -- and were told either by plaintiffs'
              0
 2
     counsel or --
 3
              Α
                     Either in deposition or that it was
 4
     locked out and tagged out. That was also part of
 5
     LCM's proposal is that the lockout/tagout would be by
 6
     Federal-Mogul.
 7
                     And while we are talking about
 8
     lockout/tagout, are you offering any opinions with
 9
     respect to the safety procedures followed by the
10
     plaintiffs or LCM in their work here?
11
                     No, other than I know, you know, safe
     work around the -- around combustible dust. I teach
12
          I do seminars on it.
13
14
                     So, for example, Mr. -- I want you to
15
     assume Mr. Hodges testified at his deposition that he
     did not check to see whether or not the Federal-Mogul
16
17
     equipment was locked out or tagged out or whether the
     bag house -- the dust collecting system had been
18
     locked out and tagged out. You are not here to offer
19
20
     any opinion as to whether that's proper procedure or
21
     otherwise; is that correct?
22
                     I have no information on that.
              Α
23
                     Okay. Is that something that would be
              Q
24
     within your expertise, to evaluate the safety
```

```
Page 37
 1
     I have seen between a half hour and an hour and a
 2
     half.
 3
              Q
                     Do you remember where you got that
     information from?
 4
 5
                     No. It could have been provided by
 6
     counsel.
 7
                     In what form? By --
              Q
 8
              Α
                     Just asking a question and statement.
 9
     Or it may have been in one of the depositions.
10
     not sure.
                     But did you do anything to verify that
11
              Q
     other than either being told by counsel or maybe
12
     reading it in one of the depositions?
13
14
                     No. I didn't contact the plant or
15
     anybody at that point. I requested -- I mean, I
16
     requested that information, and that's what I was
17
     told.
18
                     I guess the other one similar to that
     was whether or not the dust collector system was
19
     operating at the time, correct?
20
21
              Α
                     Yes.
22
                     Okay. And that's information that you
              0
     asked was it on at the time --
23
24
              Α
                     I have seen that --
```

```
Page 36
 1
     go through and eliminate the potential sources of
 2
     ignition, correct?
 3
              Α
                     Yes.
 4
              Q
                     And when you do that, do you have a
 5
     process whereby you go through eliminating the least
 6
     likely to the most likely? Or do you go most likely?
     Do you have a process to do that?
7
 8
                     I look at what the impact of each one
 9
     of them would be and whether that was available, you
10
     know, that -- like say the process equipment, whether
11
     it was running or not. If it's not running, then
     that's -- eliminates it as a source. I look through
12
     each one of them equally to make that decision.
13
14
                     So based on the list that you gave me,
15
     it's fair to say that there were some that you easily
16
     eliminated as a source of ignition?
17
                     Yes.
18
                     First being the Federal-Mogul equipment
     because, based on the information provided to you,
19
20
     that equipment had been shut down that day, correct?
21
                     Uh-huh, yes.
              Α
22
                     And do you know how long it had been
              0
23
     shut down for prior to the work on the ductwork?
24
              Α
                     I was told anywhere from a half hour --
```

```
Page 35
 1
              Α
                     If they were -- if there was a reason
 2
     as a flashlight breaking or any source -- external
 3
     source of electrical spark.
 4
              Q
                     Okay.
 5
                     If the dust collectors were operating,
 6
     which I am told they were not, that they were
 7
     electrically locked out. Again, the type of material,
     the aluminum dust.
 8
 9
                     Okay. Anything else?
10
                     The condition of settling in the
11
     ductwork of the aluminum dust. You know, if there was
     an ignition source from the process equipment, which I
12
     am told was locked out.
13
14
                     When you say process equipment, you
     mean the Federal-Mogul equipment?
15
16
              Α
                     The Federal-Mogul equipment, not the
     dust collection. NFPA will tell you ignition sources
17
     are free. You can never design all the ignition
18
     sources out of a system. You could have a short
19
20
     circuit. You can have lightning come in on it.
     is a lot of different sources of ignition.
21
2.2
                     Understood. And --
              0
23
                     Exothermal.
              Α
24
                     Sure. And part of your process is to
              Q
```

```
Page 34
 1
     documents, did you have various possible causes that
 2
     you were considering?
 3
              Α
                      Yes.
 4
                     And can you tell me what causes you
 5
     were looking at or what sources of ignition you were
 6
     looking at as the cause of the explosion?
 7
              Α
                      When I looked at the entire system --
 8
     and, again, taking the video out of it, I looked at
 9
     the role of what the workers would have been doing.
10
                     When you say the workers, who are you
11
     referring to?
                     The three individuals that were
12
              Α
     injured, the two --
13
14
                      The LCM employees, the plaintiffs, not
15
     the Federal-Mogul employees?
16
              Α
                     No, the LCM employees.
                     Okay. So you look at what were the
17
     plaintiffs doing.
18
19
              Α
                      What were the weather conditions, what
     was the operational condition of the plant.
20
21
              0
                     Okay.
22
              Α
                      Was there water-generating or vapor --
     water vapor-generating equipment in the plant.
23
24
              Q
                     What else?
```

```
Page 33
 1
     operating. Is that fair?
 2
              Α
                     Based on that information, the
 3
     information provided, yes.
                     Based on the information that you have
 4
              0
 5
     had to reach your opinion, that's -- that's the key to
 6
     determining what the cause of this explosion was,
 7
     correct?
 8
              Α
                     Yeah.
                            Yes.
 9
                     Okay. And in determining what the
10
     ignition source was, that would also help to determine
     where the origin of the explosion was as well,
11
12
     correct?
13
                     Yes. Again, looking at the video --
              Α
14
                     Well, there is no question before you.
              Q
15
     There is no question before you, so --
16
              Α
                     That could be carrying off from the
17
     last one, so...
18
                     Okay. So in terms of your
     investigation of this incident, is it fair to say that
19
     you came to a point where you had to focus on what was
20
     the source of ignition for the explosion on December
21
22
     31?
                     Yes.
23
              Α
24
                     And at your initial review of the
              Q
```

```
Page 32
 1
     was no.
 2
              Q
                     Okay. So -- and again just to go back,
 3
     so the dispersion of the dust cloud was a condition
 4
     that would have been present on any day prior to this
 5
     as well, correct?
 6
              Α
                     Yes.
 7
              Q
                     Okay. Containment. When you say
 8
     containment, what are you referring to?
 9
              Α
                     The dust collector itself.
10
                     And when you say the dust collector, is
              0
11
     that --
                     The enclosure of the bag house.
12
              Α
                     So that's not the 55-gallon drum that's
13
              0
14
     at the bottom? Or is that part of it?
                     It could be. It could be. If it's not
15
              Α
16
     isolated, that's included in that volume as well.
17
                     Okay. And, clearly, that containment
     system had been present since the system had been
18
     installed and operated?
19
20
              Α
                     Yes.
                     So the only -- only factor that we have
21
22
     to consider is what's the source of ignition in terms
     of what's different on this day to cause the explosion
23
24
     than any other day that this system has been
```

Page 31 is present on a daily basis in this system? 1 2 Α Yes. And a dust collector is a perfect 3 product classifier. The heavy particles fall down 4 onto the -- into the hopper. The light particles go 5 up onto the bags. The filtration is actually provided 6 by a dust cake on those bags. It's like your home furnace filter. About the time that you look at it 7 and it's all dirty, it's finally starting to work. 8 9 at that point you -- using the dust is actually what's 10 providing the filtration efficiency on the dust. 11 dust collector in normal operation is going to pulse off that dust down into the -- into it, but, also, a 12 dust collector that's shut down will experience dust 13 14 falling off of the bags over a period of time. 15 0 So fair to say that the bags don't get 16 rid of everything while it's on? 17 And they don't clean while it's -while it's -- they don't completely clean when you 18 19 turn it off. 20 Q Okay. You can also end up with buildup on the 21 22 walls of the dust collector. And I think in one of 23 the depositions it was asked had the dust collector

ever been cleaned or the bags changed, and the answer

24

```
Page 30
 1
     That's something that is present at all times and had
 2
     been present in this system every day, correct?
 3
              Α
                     Yes.
 4
              Q
                     Okay. Fuel. In this case, what, in
 5
     your opinion, was the fuel for the explosion?
                     The aluminum dust.
 6
 7
              Q
                     And, again, the aluminum dust was
 8
     something that had been present in the system since it
 9
     started operating some seven years earlier, correct?
10
              Α
                     Yes.
11
                     And was there any difference on this
     day in terms of the characteristics of the aluminum
12
     dust in the system?
13
14
                     I -- without, you know, analyzing the
              Α
15
     dust, I would assume that the same equipment and their
16
     process is the same day after day, and the dust is
     going to be the same every day that goes into it.
17
     have no information of a process change that was made
18
     prior to this or that had been made in the seven
19
20
     years.
                     All right. I am going to skip over
21
              0
22
     ignition source for just a second because I know you
     already mentioned the exothermic reaction there.
23
24
     Dispersion of the dust cloud, is that a condition that
```

Page 29 1 In the -- by having a dust collector 2 that's handling combustible metals, especially, it's 3 important that the dust collector not have 4 condensation on the inside of the dust collector. 5 Based on the weather data that I 6 reviewed as well as the fact that the plant has wet 7 dust collectors that will be adding moisture to the 8 air on the inside of the plant, that the probability 9 -- or, in my opinion, is is that the dust collector 10 was condensing. The material that was in there had a 11 exothermic reaction. The exothermic reaction caused 12 the explosion. And all of those things are independent of what they were doing in the ductwork or 13 14 what somebody was doing on the other end of the plant. 15 0 Okay. Let's -- well, let's go through 16 what was present on that day. And I will ask this in a -- I may ask this a couple ways. So if I say it in 17 a confusing way, please let me know. 18 19 Α Okay. 20 I will rephrase the question, or we 21 will repeat it back so that we make sure that we are 22 talking about the same thing. 23 You said five things need to be present

for an explosion to occur. The first one is oxygen.

24

- 1 the explosion occurred on that day? 2 Α Explosions don't really pick what day 3 they want to happen. It's a coming together of, you 4 know, multitude of things all at one time. Nobody 5 gets up and schedules one for 10 o'clock in the 6 morning. So it could have -- it could have happened that day, and it could have went 40 more years without 7 8 running. 9 Okay. Well then --10 The length of time really doesn't --11 the length of time that the equipment has been running does not make it any safer. I have a lot of customers 12 that say, well, we have run 20 years without an 13 explosion. Say, well, yep, you ran 20 years without 14 15 an explosion, and you had one. What happened in the 16 first 20 years.
- 17 Q Well, I guess that's where I am going
 18 next is, then what are the factors that need to be
 19 present or were present on December 31, 2010, that, in
 20 your opinion, brought about this explosion?
- 21 A To have an explosion, you need five 22 things: You need oxygen, you need fuel, you need an 23 ignition source, you need dispersion of the dust 24 cloud, and you need containment.

```
Page 27
 1
     know, based on all of those things and where I
 2
     determined the explosion originate, it would have made
 3
     no difference if they were working on it or not
 4
     working on it.
 5
                     Okay. Why is that?
              0
 6
                     Because I don't think they had -- in my
7
     professional opinion, the explosion didn't originate
 8
     at the employees. It originated in the dust
 9
     collector, and there was nothing that the employees
10
     were doing that was going to change that fact or
11
     contribute to it in the dust collector per my
     findings.
12
                     All right. And this ventilation system
13
14
     had been operating for approximately seven years --
15
              Α
                     Yes.
16
                     -- prior to this day?
                     Uh-huh.
17
              Α
                     Okay. Were there any conditions that
18
     were present on December 31, 2010, that were different
19
20
     than any other day that it had been operating up until
21
     then?
22
                     I don't have that information.
              Α
23
                     Okay. Do you have an opinion with a
              Q
24
     reasonable degree of engineering probability as to why
```

```
Page 26
 1
                     Okay. If Mr. Hodges, Mr. Bonds, and
              0
 2
    Mr. Spangler were not present cleaning the ductwork at
 3
     Federal-Mogul on December 31, 2010, would that
 4
     explosion have occurred?
 5
                     Could that explosion have occurred, or
 6
     would that --
7
                     I am asking first would that.
8
              Α
                     It's possible that the explosion could
    have occurred based on the information that I have
 9
10
           The role that the employees played in that
11
     decision -- or in that explosion, it's -- I would say
    based on what I found, it could have exploded without
12
     them being there. That's my -- my professional
13
     opinion is, is from what I saw and working on
14
     different dust collectors like that that there's a
15
16
    possibility that that could happen.
17
                     Okay. So to put it another way, I
     suppose -- well, let me go into another question with
18
            Do you have an opinion as to whether or not any
19
     of the actions taken by the plaintiffs that day in
20
     cleaning the ductwork caused or contributed to the
21
22
     explosion occurring specifically on that day?
23
                     From my analysis of the explosion and
              Α
24
     of the equipment and the videotape and the -- you
```

Page 25 1 that correct? Are those two different things, or is 2 that the same? 3 Α Yes, it's two different things. 4 Q All right. Let me ask you this 5 question: In -- I understand that this was a -- the 6 event took place on December 31 of 2010, correct? 7 Per the information that I have been Α 8 handed, yes. 9 Okay. And that was at the 10 Federal-Mogul plant in Blacksburg, Virginia, correct? Per the information that I have been 11 Α 12 provided, yes. So my question to you is: Would this 13 event have occurred on December 31, 2010, whether or 14 15 not the plaintiffs were at the Federal-Mogul plant 16 that day? 17 Can you clarify? I don't understand. 18 Sure. We know an explosion occurred on that day, and we know that the three plaintiffs were 19 20 there for LCM cleaning the ductwork. My question is: Was -- would that explosion have occurred on December 21 22 31, 2010, whether or not the plaintiffs, as LCM 23 employees, were there cleaning the ductwork that day? 24 Α Try one more time.

Page 24 1 been a component in making those decisions. 2 looking at the actual equipment that as it was destructed, it wouldn't have changed my opinion of the 3 4 designs. 5 Okay. And, again, I am trying to 6 separate two parts out here, because part of your 7 opinion seems to be that the ventilation system 8 itself -- that you were reviewing its design at the 9 outset. 10 Α Uh-huh. 11 Whether it was capable of performing Q the functions that it was intended to do at that time; 12 13 is that correct? That's one aspect? 14 Based on the information that was available. 15 16 Q Okay. 17 Publicly available at that time. All right. The second thing that you 18 0 are referring to here is looking at the event of the 19 explosion itself. 20 21 Α Yes. 22 And whether or not the component parts 23 that had been selected as part of that design were 24 appropriate based on that event and what occurred; is

```
1
     information to make a determination is, was the
 2
     information that would have been available at the time
 3
     that the equipment was selected, if that was -- if the
 4
     equipment was selected for that -- you know, based on
 5
     that information or also reviewing the explosion is
 6
     did a higher pressure or a higher Kst did the
7
     equipment experience in the explosion.
8
                     Is it fair to say that if you had that
 9
     information, you could give a more precise or a more
10
     certain opinion with respect to the design of the
11
     ventilation system?
                     It would have been part of making the
12
              Α
     analysis of it, but it wouldn't have changed the
13
14
     outcome of my opinion.
15
                     Okay. Why not?
16
                     Because the equipment -- the
     destruction of the equipment indicated that the -- in
17
     the case of the dust collector, that the vent weren't
18
    properly -- or weren't large enough to release the
19
     vents, and the dust collector tore itself apart or had
20
     structural failure. In the case of the back blast
21
22
     damper, it structurally failed due to the pressures.
23
                     Again, that doesn't -- changing --
24
     changing knowing what the dust going into would have
```

```
1
     the application.
 2
              Q
                     And since that information is not
 3
     available, does that have any impact on your certainty
 4
     or your opinion as to what you have expressed in your
 5
     report here?
 6
                     It has had an impact in what was the
 7
     final -- or the initial design information to -- and
 8
     by -- let me get my thoughts together here.
 9
                     Well, let me see if I can ask it more
10
     specifically. You said one of the things that you
11
     were reviewing was the design of the system itself.
     How would knowing the composition of the dust affect
12
     your opinion in this case on the design of the system?
13
14
                     It would determine if the dust
15
     collection equipment and the dust collection system
16
     was capable of withstanding the pressures and the
     selection of the equipment would react fast enough for
17
     the type of dust that was -- it was asked to filter.
18
19
              0
                     And without that information, were you
20
     able to reach an opinion as to the design of the
21
     system?
                     Based on the destructive forces that I
22
              Α
23
     observed on the equipment -- and, again, this is based
24
     on -- this is what I do all the time. Backed into the
```

```
Page 21
 1
                     Minimum ignition energy that it would
 2
     take to ignite it, minimum explosive concentrations,
 3
     things that you would use to analyze the dust and the
 4
     proper selection of the equipment.
 5
                     For the ventilation system itself?
                     For the ventilation system itself,
 6
 7
     including the dust collector, ductwork.
                     And why would that be important to your
 8
 9
     final opinion?
10
                     To determine the cause of the
11
     explosion; determine the severity of the explosion in
     the dust collector, in the backdraft damper, and in
12
     the ductwork; to determine the origin of the explosion
13
     as well as severity of the dust cloud that was -- or
14
15
     the gasses that were given off by it.
16
              Q
                     And, again, so you are referring to
     dust that was collected in the ductwork itself as well
17
     as the dust that was present in the bag house at the
18
     time?
19
20
              Α
                     Yes.
                           The reason that is is to properly
     select the equipment and the explosion protection, you
21
22
     have got to know the numbers of the Kst, which is rate
23
     of pressure rise over rate of time, and pressure
24
     maximum to decide the selection of the equipment for
```

Page 20 1 And can you explain to me what you mean 0 2 by dust testing of the aluminum dust? 3 Α The dust test would have been provided 4 by a company similar to Chilworth, Fenwal, where they 5 actually run the chemical characteristics and have --6 explode the dust to measure what the rate of rise of 7 the pressure over time, delta P over delta T, which is 8 used in calculating Kst, and also Pmax, which is the 9 maximum pressure involved in the explosion. I was told that the dust had not been 10 11 tested prior to that, that there was dust that -there was dust samples available. But due to the time 12 since the explosion, unless it was really tested prior 13 to the explosion, anything after that point wouldn't 14 15 give you an accurate representation of what was in the 16 dust collector or the ductwork at that time. 17 Okay. And, again, sometimes I will need to go and clarify just so that I understand. 18 Your interest in finding out was what the components 19 were of the dust that was described as being in the 20 vents at the time of the explosion, correct? 21 22 Both components and the chemistry of Α 23 it, what the explosive values of the material was. 24 Q All right.

```
Page 19
 1
              Α
                     No.
 2
              Q
                     Have you had any personal interviews
 3
     with any other LCM employees, such as Danny Collins?
 4
              Α
                     No.
 5
                     Prior to preparing your report for
 6
     plaintiffs' counsel, did you request any additional
7
     information that was not provided to you? You know,
 8
     let me withdraw that and ask it another way. Have you
 9
     asked for any information from plaintiffs' counsel
10
     that has not been provided to you?
11
              Α
                     There is nothing that I have asked for
     that's not been provided to me. To give you a more
12
     full answer, on the -- what I reviewed and the
13
     information is in my report on Pages 7, 8, 9, and 10.
14
15
     So that's more of a total listing of what I received
16
     and what I reviewed.
                     And I understand that.
17
                                              I understand
     what you did use. I am just asking if there was
18
     something that you asked for that you were told either
19
     it doesn't exist or we don't have it or we will get it
20
21
     for you, anything like that.
22
                     The only information that I asked for
     that was -- that I was told was not available was dust
23
24
     testing of the aluminum dust prior to the explosion.
```

```
Page 18
 1
     from witnesses who were present at the time of the
 2
     event?
 3
              Α
                     The reports that I see from OSHA are
 4
     usually at the citation level, not at the
 5
     investigation level.
 6
                     Would you agree with me that having
 7
     statements from witnesses who were present at the time
 8
     of the event is important in a full evaluation of the
 9
     causes of an event such as this?
                     From the information that I have seen
10
11
     and the depositions that I have read, I felt those
     were the key players in the evaluation of the
12
     explosion and didn't require any additional workers or
13
     any additional information.
14
15
                     Have you ever read any statements from
16
     any Federal-Mogul employees who were present at the
     time of the explosion?
17
                     I am not sure if David Garard was at
18
     the -- present at that time or not.
19
20
              Q
                     And David Garard is the only
21
     Federal-Mogul employee whose statements --
2.2
                     That I can recollect right now.
              Α
23
              Q
                     Have you ever had any personal
24
     interviews with any of the plaintiffs in this case?
```

```
Page 17
 1
    provided.
 2
              Q
                     Did you have any reports regarding the
 3
     investigation of the explosion?
 4
              Α
                     By?
 5
                     By the Blacksburg Fire Department, by
 6
     OSHA, by any governmental agency.
 7
                      I have looked at the -- and this was
              Α
     when we got in to do the site visit and the analysis
 8
 9
     of the -- of all the information, I looked at the fire
10
     department's evaluation. Did not look at OSHA's
     evaluation.
11
                     Is there some reason you have not
12
              Q
13
     looked at the OSHA report?
14
              Α
                     No.
                     Would that contain information that
15
              Q
16
     would be helpful to you in reaching a hypothesis or an
17
     opinion in this matter?
                      I don't feel that OSHA would have
18
     anything in their report that would be more than what
19
20
     was provided by the other information that I got.
21
                     Are you familiar with OSHA reports that
     are done in situations such as this?
22
23
                     Yes.
              Α
24
                      Do those reports contain statements
              Q
```

```
Page 16
 1
     first time?
 2
              Α
                     I think August, early August.
 3
              Q
                     Of this year?
 4
              Α
                     Of this year.
 5
                     So between November of 2011 and August
 6
     of 2013, there was a continuous stream of information
 7
     being provided to you by the plaintiffs' counsel?
                     Yes. I mean, not every day did I
 8
              Α
 9
     receive something on it, but it may go two or three
10
     months and I would review something, and then maybe a
11
     month later I'd end up reviewing something.
                     Okay. Prior to your first visit to the
12
              Q
     site in August of 2013, at that point -- prior to that
13
     time, what written information or documentation did
14
     you have other than what we have already discussed,
15
16
     which is the video, the deposition transcripts of the
     plaintiffs and the Federal-Mogul employees, and the
17
     design --
18
19
                     Design information.
              Α
20
                     -- information and the exhibits from
              0
     the depositions?
21
                     The order information from -- for
22
              Α
     Dustex, the order information for Kirk & Blum, all
23
24
     relative documents about the equipment of what was
```

Page 15 1 in the system, make sure that it was -- met the 2 function required, NFPA requirements, or the safe 3 operating. Q You said earlier independent review of 5 all the information. At this point in time, all 6 you've told me that you have received were the 7 depositions of the plaintiffs and the Federal-Mogul 8 employees and the exhibits with those depositions. 9 Α I guess the --10 Is that correct? 0 11 Α The initial part of it, the initial contact would be to do that independent review. 12 the depositions came in and requested different 13 information that was provided, I reviewed that 14 15 information. But the scope of what my direction was 16 was to take a look at the total system and analyze the 17 system and its components. 18 Is it fair to say that in order to 0 analyze the system and its components, then all you 19 needed was the deposition exhibits and the design 20 plans that you referred to? 21 22 And also to visit the site, look at the Α 23 equipment. 24 Q When did you visit the site for the

Page 14 1 specific aspect of the incident? 2 Α No. 3 Q Were you asked the question like we'd 4 like to hear your opinion on what the cause of the 5 explosion was or some other aspect of this? 6 No. What I was asked for was an 7 independent review of all the information with really 8 no pressure to say here is what your answer needs to 9 be in the end of it. A big part of my business is 10 providing that for manufacturing companies, is review 11 what they have to see if it's in compliance or where they are deficient. 12 13 And that's where I was going, whether 14 they were asking you to evaluate, for example, the ventilation system that was in place to determine 15 16 whether or not it was in compliance, if that was the request, or if the request was can you provide us your 17 opinion on the function of the various components of 18 19 the system in the explosion that occurred. 20 In both of those. In our business when Α 21 we do an analysis, we look at each piece of equipment. 22 If I was called into a plant to look at their dust 23 collection system to see if it was in compliance, we 24 would look at the total system and then each component

```
Page 13
 1
     when I received any of the information. It's just
 2
     been ongoing.
                     Other than the deposition transcripts,
 3
              Q
 4
     in terms of your initial review of the case, was there
 5
     anything else that you referred to when you first were
     retained?
 6
 7
              Α
                     No.
                     Did there come a point in time that you
 8
 9
     requested additional documents from plaintiffs'
10
     counsel for your review?
11
              Α
                     Yes.
                     What documents did you request?
12
                     Just design information from Dustex,
13
14
     and I think it's more of the -- along the line of
     exhibits that were in -- or information that was in
15
16
     the depositions.
17
                     And again referring to the depositions
     of the plaintiffs and the Federal-Mogul employees?
18
19
              Α
                     Yes. Again, the exact timeline of when
     I received what, I could go back and reconstruct it
20
     maybe from e-mails or telephone conversations, but I
21
22
     don't really recollect when that was -- happened.
                     When you were first retained to review
23
              Q
24
     the case, were you asked to focus your review on any
```

```
Page 12
 1
     you found news reports about the explosion that
 2
     occurred at the Federal-Mogul plant as part of your
 3
     ongoing professional duties?
 4
              Α
                      Yes.
 5
                      Did there come a point in time that
 6
     plaintiffs' counsel provided you with a factual
 7
     background regarding their clients and/or the
     incident?
 8
 9
              Α
                     Yes. At what time or the dates, I am
10
     not sure.
                      I'm more interested in what -- what
11
              Q
     information was provided to you.
12
                      Started -- the best of my memory, it
13
14
     started with depositions.
15
                      Okay. And depositions of?
16
                      Depositions of the employees that were
     injured, depositions from Federal-Mogul's employees.
17
18
                      Did you receive those -- were they
     transcripts of the depositions?
19
20
              Α
                      Yes.
21
                     And did you receive those before you
22
     received any other written materials relating to this
     incident?
23
24
              Α
                      I really don't have a good timeline on
```

```
Page 11
 1
     for this case?
 2
              Α
                     No.
 3
              Q
                     Was that done by another meeting, a
 4
     phone call, a letter?
 5
                     Best I can remember, another phone
     call.
 6
 7
                     Were you given any additional
              Q
 8
     information about the case through that phone call?
 9
                     No, just to discuss the -- whether I
10
     was interested in working with them on the case.
11
                     And was there a general discussion of
              Q
     what the case was about at that time?
12
13
              A
                     Yes.
14
                     Can you tell me what you recall about
     that conversation?
15
16
                      I also knew from news reports what the
     case was about as well.
17
                     And had you looked at the news reports
18
     on your own or at the request of Mr. Brown and
19
20
     Mr. Johnson?
21
                     On my own in that I do a lot on web
22
     sites and with the chemical safety board. I am not
     sure where it would have come up at.
23
24
              Q
                     Okay. And again so that I am clear,
```

```
Page 10
 1
     case that you were working on?
 2
              Α
                     Uh-huh.
 3
              Q
                     And while you were having that meeting,
     there was a discussion about this case?
 5
                      Yes.
 6
                     And after viewing the video, did you
 7
     offer any opinions or information on what further
     documents or data you would need?
 8
 9
                     No, not at that time.
10
                     All right. Did there come a point in
     time that you were retained to review additional
11
12
     documents in this case?
13
              Δ
                     Yes.
14
                     When was that?
              Q
15
                      I am not real sure of the dates, but
16
     would have been within the last year.
                     You said the case was first mentioned
17
     to you in November 2011?
18
19
              Α
                     Yes.
20
                      So sometime during 2012 was when you
              0
     were contacted, or was it in 2013?
21
22
              Α
                      I don't recollect.
23
                     Do you have any documents that would
              Q
24
     refresh your recollection as to when you were retained
```

```
Page 9
 1
                      I think November of 2011.
              Α
 2
              Q
                     Who was it that contacted you?
 3
              Α
                     Mr. Brown and Mr. Johnson.
 4
              Q
                     Was that in person or by phone?
 5
              Α
                      In person.
 6
                     And was that here in Roanoke or at your
 7
     offices in South Carolina?
                      It was in Hilton Head while I was on
 8
              Α
     vacation.
 9
10
                     MR. ALEXANDER: Only you?
11
12
     BY MR. MORRIS:
                     Prior to that meeting, had you received
13
     any contact, any documents, any information about the
14
15
     case?
16
              Α
                     No.
                     Can you tell me what information you
17
     were provided about the case at that first meeting.
18
19
              Α
                     We were -- just reviewed video of the
20
     explosion, discussed just the video, and that was the
21
     extent of it. The main part of the meeting was for a
22
     different case I was working with Mr. Brown on.
                      I see, okay. And just so that I am
23
              Q
24
     clear, so the meeting was set up to discuss another
```

```
Page 8
 1
     today, did you bring any written materials with you?
 2
              Α
                     Other than the report and just really
 3
     what's been issued, no. Nothing else in writing.
 4
     notes.
 5
              Q
                     When you say issued, what -- what are
     you referring to?
 6
 7
              Α
                     The report that I issued.
                     Okay. Do you have any documents that
 8
              0
     have been provided to you by plaintiffs' counsel?
 9
10
              Α
                     Yes.
                     What documents do you have that were
11
              Q
     provided to you by plaintiffs' counsel?
12
13
                     They were detailed in the report.
14
                     Okay. So in the report there is a
15
     listing of all the references in terms of documents
     related --
16
17
              Α
                     Yes.
                     -- to this case. And other than those,
18
     you have no other documents?
19
20
              Α
                     At this time I cannot think of any
     other documents that I was provided since then.
21
22
                     Can you tell me when you were first
              0
23
     contacted by plaintiffs' counsel with respect to this
24
     matter?
```

```
Page 7
 1
     Doug Edwards?
 2
              Α
                      Yes.
 3
              Q
                      Who is Doug Edwards?
 4
              Α
                      Doug Edwards was my counterpart in
 5
     Cincinnati.
                  He was the director of engineering and
     was responsible for the engineering portions of
 6
 7
     Kbd/Technic in Cincinnati.
 8
                      And during the time that you worked at
 9
     Kbd/Technic, did you ever work on any projects
     together with Mr. Edwards?
10
11
              Α
                      Yes.
                      And can you tell me what each of your
12
     roles were in those projects?
13
14
              Α
                      I would either be lead designer and he
15
     would be a support or the other way around, and I
16
     would provide engineering support for -- on his
     projects.
17
                      Okay. So it's a collaborative effort
18
              Q
19
     for --
20
                      Collaborative effort.
              Α
21
                      And that would be for a client of
              0
     Kbd/Technic?
22
23
              Α
                      Yes.
24
                      With respect to your deposition here
              Q
```

```
Page 6
     report that you provided to the plaintiffs' attorneys.
 1
 2
                     For purposes of the record, can you
 3
     please give us your name and your address.
 4
              Α
                     Martin Schloss, 103 Hickory Hill Lane,
 5
     Greenville, South Carolina, 29609.
 6
              0
                     Mr. Schloss, as I said, I represent
 7
     Kirk & Blum. Are you familiar with Kirk & Blum?
 8
              Α
                     Yes.
 9
                     And how is it that you are familiar
10
     with Kirk & Blum?
11
              Α
                      I worked for a sister company of Kirk &
     Blum, Kbd/Technic.
12
13
                     When did you work for Kbd/Technic?
                      2000 -- let me check here. 2007 to
14
              Α
15
     2010.
16
              Q
                     And what was your position with
     Kbd/Technic?
17
18
                     Southeast regional manager.
              Α
19
                     What were your job duties?
20
              Α
                     Responsible for the design,
     engineering, sales, and operations of the southeast
21
22
     region of the consulting engineering company.
                     During the time that you worked at
23
              Q
24
     Kbd/Technic, did you ever have any encounters with
```